

Pearson Higher Nationals in Engineering

Specification

First Teaching from September 2017

First Certification from 2018

Issue 5



Level
BTEC
Higher
National
Certificate

4

Level
BTEC
Higher
National
Diploma

5

Edexcel, BTEC and LCCI qualifications

Edexcel, BTEC and LCCI qualifications are awarded by Pearson, the UK's largest awarding body offering academic and vocational qualifications that are globally recognised and benchmarked. For further information, please visit our qualifications website at qualifications.pearson.com. Alternatively, you can get in touch with us using the details on our contact us page at qualifications.pearson.com/contactus

About Pearson

Pearson is the world's leading learning company, with 35,000 employees in more than 70 countries working to help people of all ages to make measurable progress in their lives through learning. We put the learner at the centre of everything we do, because wherever learning flourishes, so do people. Find out more about how we can help you and your learners at qualifications.pearson.com

References to third-party material made in this specification are made in good faith. We do not endorse, approve or accept responsibility for the content of materials, which may be subject to change, or any opinions expressed therein. (Material may include textbooks, journals, magazines and other publications and websites.)

All information in this specification is correct at time of publication.

ISBN 978 1 446 95273 3

All the material in this publication is copyright
© Pearson Education Limited 2017

Contents

1. Introduction	1
1.1 The Student Voice	1
1.2 Why choose Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals?	1
1.3 HN Global	2
1.4 Qualification titles	3
1.5 Qualification codes	3
1.6 Awarding organisation	3
1.7 Key features	4
1.8 Collaborative development	4
1.9 Professional Body consultation and approval	6
2. Programme purpose and objectives	7
2.1 Purpose of the BTEC Higher Nationals in Engineering	7
2.2 Objectives of the BTEC Higher Nationals in Engineering	7
2.3 Aims of the Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering	8
2.4 Aims of the Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering	9
2.5 What could these qualifications lead to?	10
2.6 Use of maths and English within the curriculum	11
2.7 How Higher Nationals in Engineering provide both transferable employability skills and academic study skills	12
3. Planning your programme	14
3.1 Delivering the Higher National qualifications	14
3.2 Entry requirements and admissions	14
3.3 Access to study	17
3.4 Student registration and entry	17
3.5 Access to assessment	18
3.6 Administrative arrangements for internal assessment	18
3.7 Dealing with malpractice in assessment	19
4. Programme structure	22
4.1 Units, Credits, Total Qualification Time (TQT) and Guided Learning (GL)	22
4.2 Programme structures	23
4.3 Pearson-Set Assignments	47
4.4 Annotated unit descriptor	48
4.5 Professional Body collaboration	52
5. Teaching and learning	53
5.1 Delivering quality and depth	53
5.2 Engaging with employers	54
5.3 Engaging with students	55

5.4	Planning and structuring a programme	56
5.4.1	Sequencing units	56
5.4.2	Condensed or expanded delivery	57
5.4.3	Drawing on a wide range of delivery techniques	58
5.4.4	Assessment considerations	60
5.4.5	Formative assessment	61
5.4.6	Summative assessment	61
5.4.7	Assessment feedback	61
5.4.8	Designing valid and reliable assessments	61
6.	Assessment	64
6.1	Principles of internal assessment	65
6.2	Setting effective assignments	67
6.3	Making valid assessment decisions	69
6.4	Planning and record keeping	72
6.5	Calculation of the final qualification grade	73
7.	Quality assurance	76
7.1	The approval process	76
7.2	Monitoring of internal centre systems	77
7.3	Independent assessment review	77
7.4	Annual programme monitoring report (APMR)	77
7.5	Annual student survey	77
7.6	Centre and qualification approval	78
7.7	Continuing Quality Assurance and standards verification	78
8.	Recognition of Prior Learning and Attainment	80
9.	Equality and diversity	81
10.	Higher Nationals Engineering Units	83
Unit 1:	Engineering Design	84
Unit 2:	Engineering Maths	90
Unit 3:	Engineering Science	96
Unit 4:	Managing a Professional Engineering Project	102
Unit 5:	Renewable Energy	109
Unit 6:	Mechatronics	114
Unit 7:	Machining and Processing of Engineering Materials	119
Unit 8:	Mechanical Principles	125
Unit 9:	Materials, Properties and Testing	130
Unit 10:	Mechanical Workshop Practices	136
Unit 11:	Fluid Mechanics	142
Unit 12:	Engineering Management	147
Unit 13:	Fundamentals of Thermodynamics and Heat Engines	152

Unit 14: Production Engineering for Manufacture	158
Unit 15: Automation, Robotics and Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs)	164
Unit 16: Instrumentation and Control Systems	170
Unit 17: Quality and Process Improvement	175
Unit 18: Maintenance Engineering	180
Unit 19: Electrical and Electronic Principles	186
Unit 20: Digital Principles	191
Unit 21: Electrical Machines	196
Unit 22: Electronic Circuits and Devices	202
Unit 23: Computer Aided Design and Manufacture (CAD/CAM)	207
Unit 29: Electro, Pneumatic and Hydraulic Systems	213
Unit 30: Operations and Plant Management	219
Unit 31: Electrical Systems and Fault Finding	225
Unit 32: CAD for Maintenance Engineers	231
Unit 34: Research Project	236
Unit 35: Professional Engineering Management	242
Unit 36: Advanced Mechanical Principles	249
Unit 37: Virtual Engineering	254
Unit 38: Further Thermodynamics	260
Unit 39: Further Mathematics	265
Unit 40: Commercial Programming Software	271
Unit 41: Distributed Control Systems	277
Unit 42: Further Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs)	283
Unit 43: Further Electrical Machines and Drives	289
Unit 44: Industrial Power, Electronics and Storage	295
Unit 45: Industrial Systems	301
Unit 46: Embedded Systems	307
Unit 47: Analogue Electronic Systems	312
Unit 48: Manufacturing Systems Engineering	318
Unit 49: Lean Manufacturing	324
Unit 50: Advanced Manufacturing Technology	330
Unit 51: Sustainability	336
Unit 52: Further Electrical, Electronic and Digital Principles	342
Unit 53: Utilisation of Electrical Power	348
Unit 54: Further Control Systems Engineering	354
Unit 62: Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning (HVAC)	360
Unit 63: Industrial Services	366
Unit 64: Thermofluids	372
Unit 73: Materials Engineering with Polymers	378
Unit 74: Polymer Manufacturing Processes	385

11. Appendices	391
Appendix 1: Mapping of HND in Engineering against FHEQ Level 5	392
Appendix 2: HNC/HND Engineering Programme Outcomes for Learners	397
Appendix 3: Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering: mapping of transferable employability and academic study skills	403
Appendix 4: Glossary of command verbs used for internally assessed units	408
Appendix 5: Assessment Methods and Techniques for Higher Nationals	411

1. Introduction

BTEC is one of the world's most successful and best-loved applied learning brand, and it has been engaging students in practical, interpersonal and thinking skills for more than thirty years.

BTECs are work-related qualifications for students taking their first steps into employment, or for those already in employment and seeking career development opportunities. BTECs provide progression into the workplace either directly or via study at university and are also designed to meet employers' needs. Therefore, Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications are widely recognised by industry and higher education as the principal vocational qualification at Levels 4 and 5.

When redeveloping the Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications in Engineering, we collaborated with a wide range of students, employers, higher education providers, colleges and subject experts, to ensure that the new qualifications meet their needs and expectations. We also worked closely with the Engineering Council guidelines for Level 3 and Level 6, and the relevant Professional Bodies, to ensure alignment with recognised professional standards and the correct level of learning.

There is now a greater emphasis on employer engagement and work readiness. The new BTEC Higher National qualifications in Engineering are designed to reflect this increasing need for high quality professional and technical education pathways at Levels 4 and 5. These qualifications provide students with a clear pathway to employment, appropriate support during employment and a recognised progression route to gain the further learning required at Level 6 to achieve Incorporated Engineer (IEng) registration or to the final stages of a degree.

1.1 The Student Voice

Students are at the heart of what we do. That is why, from the outset, we consulted with students in the development of these qualifications. We involved them in writing groups, sought their feedback, and added their voices and views to those of other stakeholders.

The result, we believe, are qualifications that will meet the needs and expectations of students worldwide.

1.2 Why choose Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals?

Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals are designed to help students secure the knowledge skills and behaviours needed to succeed in the workplace. They represent the latest in professional standards and provide opportunities for students to develop behaviours for work, for example by undertaking a group project, or responding to a client brief. A student may even achieve exemption from professional or vendor qualifications, or student membership of selected professional bodies, to help them on their journey to professional competence.

At the same time the BTEC Higher Nationals are intended to keep doors open for future study should a student wish to progress further in their education after their level 5 study. They do this by allowing space for the development of higher education study skills, such as the ability to research. Clear alignment of level of demand with the Framework for Higher Education qualification descriptors at level 4 and 5 means that students wishing to progress to level 6 study should feel better prepared. The Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals address these various requirements by providing:

- A range of core, optional and specialist units, each with a clear purpose, so there is something to suit each student's choice of programme and future progression plans.
- Fully revised content that is closely aligned with the needs of employers, professional bodies, vendors and higher education for a skilled future workforce.
- The opportunity to develop transferable skills useful for work and for higher education, including research skills, the ability to meet deadlines and communication skills.
- Learning Outcomes mapped against Professional Body standards and vendor accreditation requirements, where appropriate.
- Assessments and projects chosen to help students progress to the next stage (this means some are set by the centre to meet local needs, while others are set by Pearson). Students are required to apply their knowledge to a variety of assignments and activities, with a focus on the holistic development of practical, interpersonal and higher level thinking skills.
- An approach to demand at level 4 and 5 which is aligned with the Framework for Higher Education Qualifications (FHEQ).
- Support for student and tutors including Schemes of Work and Example Assessment Briefs.

1.3 HN Global

Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals are supported by a specially designed range of digital resources, to ensure that tutors and students have the best possible experience during their course. These are available from the HN Global website <http://www.highernationals.com/>.

With HN Global, tutors can access programme specifications which contain useful information on programme planning and quality assurance processes. Tutors can also view Schemes of Work and Example Assessment Briefs, helping them create meaningful courses and assessments. HN Global also allows tutors to create and annotate reading lists for their students and also keep up-to-date on the latest news regarding HN programmes.

1.4 Qualification titles

Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering

Specialist pathways are included within brackets in the qualification title:

- Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering (Electrical and Electronic Engineering)
- Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering (General Engineering)
- Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering (Manufacturing Engineering)
- Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering (Mechanical Engineering)
- Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering (Operations Engineering)

Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering

Specialist pathways are included within brackets in the qualification title:

- Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering (Electrical and Electronic Engineering)
- Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering (General Engineering)
- Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering (Manufacturing Engineering)
- Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering (Mechanical Engineering)
- Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering (Operations Engineering)

1.5 Qualification codes

Regulated Qualifications Framework (RQF) Qualification number:

- Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering: 603/0450/9
- Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering: 603/0451/0

1.6 Awarding organisation

Pearson Education Ltd

1.7 Key features

Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications in Engineering offer:

- A stimulating and challenging programme of study that will be both engaging and memorable for students.
- The essential subject knowledge that students need to progress successfully within or into the world of work or onto further study.
- A simplified structure: students undertake a substantial core of learning, required by all engineers, with limited specialism in the Higher National Certificate, building on this in the Higher National Diploma, with further specialist and optional units linked to their specialist area of study.
- One general and four specialist pathways at Level 4 and 5 so there is something to suit each student's preference for study and future progression plans.
- Refreshed content that is closely aligned with employer, Professional Body and higher education needs.
- Assessments that consider cognitive skills (what students know) along with effective and applied skills (respectively how they behave and what they can do).
- Unit-specific grading and Pearson-set assignments.
- A varied approach to assessment that supports progression to Level 6 and also allows centres to offer assessment relevant to the local economy, thereby accommodating and enhancing different learning styles.
- Quality assurance measures – as outlined in *sections 6 and 7* of this Programme Specification – to ensure that all stakeholders (e.g. Professional Bodies, universities, businesses, colleges and students) can feel confident in the integrity and value of the qualifications.
- A qualification designed to meet the needs and expectations of students aspiring to work in an international setting.

Qualification frameworks

Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications are designated Higher Education qualifications in the UK. They are aligned to the Framework for Higher Education Qualifications (FHEQ) in England, Wales and Northern Ireland, and Quality Assurance Agency (QAA) Subject Sector Benchmarks. These qualifications are part of the UK Regulated Qualifications Framework (RQF).

1.8 Collaborative development

Students completing their BTEC Higher Nationals in Engineering will be aiming to go on to employment or progress to a final year at university. Therefore, it was essential that we developed these qualifications in close collaboration with experts from Professional Bodies, businesses and universities, and with the providers who will be delivering the qualifications.

We are very grateful to all the university and further education tutors, employers, Professional Body representatives and other individuals who have generously shared their time and expertise to help us develop these new qualifications.

Employers and Professional Bodies involved have included:

- Alstom
- BMW
- Eaton
- GEN 2
- Jaguar Land Rover
- Railtrack
- Siemens
- UAE Military Logistics Support
- Engineering Council
- Royal Aeronautical Society
- Royal Academy of Engineering
- SEMTA
- Society of Operations Engineers
- The Institution of Engineering and Technology
- The Institute of the Motor Industry
- The Welding Institute
- NFEC (National Forum of Engineering Centres).

Higher education providers that have collaborated with us include:

- Aston University
- Birmingham Metropolitan College
- Blackpool and Fylde College
- Bridgwater College
- Brunel University
- Coventry University College
- University of Derby
- St Helens College
- Teesside University
- UCL
- Warwickshire College.

1.9 Professional Body consultation and approval

Qualifications in engineering within the UK are referenced against the Engineering Council, UK specifications which sets standards at Levels 3, 6 and 8.

The Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals in Engineering are set at Level 4 and 5 and have been written with reference to the Engineering Council specification for Level 3 and 6. The content and level has been written following advice from the Professional Bodies listed in section 1.7 above and is intended to exempt holders of this qualification from the Level 4 and 5 requirements of these bodies, and articulate with the Level 6 in engineering degree courses.

Holders of a BTEC Higher National in Engineering meet the academic requirements for the Engineering Council Engineering Technician Standard (**EngTech**).

2. Programme purpose and objectives

2.1 Purpose of the BTEC Higher Nationals in Engineering

The purpose of BTEC Higher Nationals in Engineering is to develop students as professional, self-reflecting individuals who are able to meet the demands of employers in the rapidly evolving engineering sector and adapt to a constantly changing world. The qualifications also aim to widen access to higher education and enhance the career prospects of those who undertake them.

2.2 Objectives of the BTEC Higher Nationals in Engineering

The objectives of the BTEC Higher Nationals in Engineering are as follows:

- To provide students with the core knowledge, skills and techniques that all engineers require, irrespective of future specialism, to achieve high performance in the engineering profession.
- To build a body of specialist knowledge, skills and techniques in order to be successful in a range of careers in engineering at the Associate Engineer or Operational Engineer level.
- To develop the skills necessary to fault find and problem solve in a timely, professional manner, reflecting on their work and contributing to the development of the process and environment they operate within.
- To understand the responsibilities of the engineer within society, and work with integrity, regard for cost, sustainability and the rapid rate of change experienced in world class engineering.
- To provide opportunities for students to enter, or progress in, employment within the engineering sector, or progress to higher education qualifications such as degrees and honours degree in engineering or a closely related area, by balancing employability skills with academic attainment.
- To provide opportunities for students to make progress towards achieving internationally recognised registration with a Professional Body regulated by the Engineering Council.
- To allow flexibility of study and to meet local or specialist needs.

We aim to meet these objectives by:

- Providing a thorough grounding in engineering principles at Level 4 that leads the student to a range of specialist progression pathways at Level 5, relating to individual professions within the engineering sector.
- Equipping individuals with the essential qualities of an engineer, including integrity, regard for cost and sustainability, as they apply to a range of roles and responsibilities within the sector.
- Enabling progression to a university degree by supporting the development of academic study skills and the selection of appropriate units for study at Level 4 or 5.

- Enabling progression to further professional qualifications in specific engineering disciplines by mapping the units studied to the requirements of the Professional Bodies applicable to that discipline.
- Supporting a range of study modes and timeframes for completion of the qualifications.

Who is this qualification for?

The BTEC Higher National qualifications in Engineering are aimed at students wanting to continue their education through applied learning. Higher Nationals provide a wide-ranging study of the engineering sector and are designed for students who wish to pursue a career in engineering. In addition to the skills, knowledge and techniques that underpin the study of the sector, Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals in Engineering give students experience of the breadth and depth of the sector that will prepare them for employment, progression within employment or further study.

2.3 Aims of the Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering

The Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering offers students a broad introduction to the subject area via a mandatory core of learning, while allowing for the acquisition of some sector-specific skills and experience through the specialist units in each pathway, with the opportunity to pursue a particular interest through the appropriate selection of optional units. This effectively builds underpinning core skills while preparing the student for more intense subject specialisation at Level 5. Students will gain a wide range of sector knowledge tied to practical skills gained in research, self-study, directed study and workplace activities.

The Level 4 Higher National Certificate offers five pathways for students who wish to concentrate on a particular aspect of engineering:

- Electrical and Electronic
- General
- Manufacturing
- Mechanical
- Operations.

At Level 4 students develop a broad knowledge and awareness of key aspects of the engineering sector through four core units for each pathway, including one unit assessed by a Pearson-set assignment. The core units are:

- Unit 1: Engineering Design
- Unit 2: Engineering Mathematics
- Unit 3: Engineering Science
- Unit 4: Managing a Professional Engineering Project*.

*Unit 4: Managing a Professional Engineering Project is also the Pearson-set assignment unit.

- For the Electrical and Electronic Engineering pathway, students take the four mandatory core units, one specialist unit and three additional optional units.
- For the General Engineering pathway, students take the four mandatory core units and an additional four optional units.
- For the Manufacturing Engineering pathway, students take the four mandatory core units, two specialist units and an additional two optional units.
- For the Mechanical Engineering pathway, students take the four mandatory core units, two specialist units and an additional two optional units.
- For the Operations Engineering pathway, students take the four mandatory core units and an additional four optional units.

(See *section 4.2* for a full list of the mandatory core, specialist and optional units for each pathway.)

Graduates successfully completing the Higher National Certificate will be able to demonstrate a sound knowledge of the basic concepts of engineering. They will be able to communicate accurately and appropriately and they will have the qualities of personal responsibility needed for employment. They will have developed a range of transferable skills to ensure effective team working, independent working with growing fault finding and problem-solving strategies, and organisational awareness. They will be adaptable and flexible in their approach to work, showing resilience under pressure and the ability to meet challenging targets within a reasonable, pre-set, timeframe. They will also demonstrate regard for the ethical responsibilities of the engineer, for cost and for the importance of protecting and sustaining the environment.

2.4 Aims of the Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering

The Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering offers students five pathways, designed to support progression into relevant occupational areas or onto degree-level study. These pathways are linked to Professional Body standards (where appropriate) and can provide progression towards professional status or entry to the later stages of an appropriate degree.

Holders of the Level 5 Higher National Diploma will have developed a sound understanding of the principles in their field of study, and will have learned to apply those principles more widely. Through this they will have learned to evaluate the appropriateness of different approaches to solving problems. They will be able to perform effectively in their chosen field, and will have the qualities necessary for employment in situations requiring the exercise of personal responsibility and decision-making.

The Level 5 Higher National Diploma offers five pathways for students who wish to concentrate on a particular aspect of engineering:

- Electrical and Electronic
- General
- Manufacturing
- Mechanical
- Operations

At Level 5 students continue to build on the essential skills, knowledge and techniques necessary for all engineers whilst working through a larger number of subject-specific specialist and optional units. The two mandatory core units at Level 5 are:

- Unit 34: Research Project
- Unit 35: Professional Engineering Management*.
*(Unit 35: Professional Engineering Management is also the Pearson-set assignment unit)
- For the Electrical and Electronic Engineering pathway, students take the two mandatory core units, three specialist units and an additional two optional units.
- For the General Engineering pathway, students take the two mandatory core units, two specialist units and an additional three optional units.
- For the Manufacturing Engineering pathway, students take the two mandatory core units, three specialist units and an additional two optional units.
- For the Mechanical Engineering pathway, students take the two mandatory core units, three specialist units and an additional two optional units.
- For the Operations Engineering pathway, students take the two mandatory core units, four specialist units and an additional Optional unit.

(See section 4.2 for a full list of the mandatory core, specialist and optional units for each pathway.)

2.5 What could these qualifications lead to?

The Level 4 Higher National Certificate provides a solid grounding in engineering, which students can build on should they decide to continue their studies beyond the Certificate stage. The Level 5 Higher National Diploma allows students to specialise by committing to specific career paths and progression routes to degree-level study.

On successful completion of the Level 5 Higher National Diploma, students can develop their careers in the engineering sector through:

- Entering employment
- Continuing existing employment
- Linking with the appropriate Professional Body
- Linking with the appropriate vendor accredited certificates [if appropriate]
- Committing to Continuing Professional Development (CPD)
- Progressing to university.

The Level 5 Higher National Diploma is recognised by Higher Education providers as meeting admission requirements to many relevant engineering degree programmes in subject specialisms such as:

- Engineering
- Electronic and Electrical Engineering
- Production and Manufacturing Engineering
- Mechanical Engineering
- Operations Engineering

Students should always check the entry requirements for degree programmes at specific Higher Education providers. After completing a BTEC Higher National Certificate or Diploma, students can also progress directly into employment.

The skills offered as part of the Pearson BTEC Higher National Diploma can provide graduates with the opportunity to work in many different areas of the engineering. Below are some examples of job roles each qualification could lead to.

Pathway	Typical Job Roles after HNC	Typical Job Roles after HND
Electrical and Electronic Engineering	Electrical Engineering Technician Electronics Engineering Technician	Electrical Engineer Electronic Engineer
Manufacturing Engineering	Manufacturing Systems Technician	Manufacturing Systems Engineer
Mechanical Engineering	Mechanical Engineering Technician	Mechanical Engineer
Operations Engineering	Automotive Engineering Technician	Automotive Engineer
General Engineering	Engineering Maintenance Technician	Maintenance Engineer

2.6 Use of maths and English within the curriculum

Those working within the engineering sector cannot just rely on their technical skills and must ensure they develop all relevant employability skills to increase employment opportunities. For example, they will be required to communicate appropriately with stakeholders throughout their career, so the ability to use maths and English in a professional context is an essential employability skill that must be developed at all levels of study.

Development of essential maths and English skills are embedded throughout these qualifications in accordance with industry requirements and below are some examples of how these skills are developed in the BTEC Higher National curriculum:

- written reports
- formal presentations
- informal conversations
- use of professional, sector specific language
- use of algebraic, logarithmic and circular functions
- use of analytical and computational methods to evaluate and solve engineering problems
- use of integral calculus to solve practical problems relating to engineering.

Some aspects of engineering require high level maths skills and we strongly recommend all students complete diagnostic maths assessments preferably before beginning a Higher National course, as well as having an A* to C grade and/or 9 to 4 in GCSE Maths (or equivalent) prior to starting the course (see *section 3.2 Entry requirements and admissions*).

Throughout the programme, students will be using a high level of maths within the curriculum. It is vital that all students taking a BTEC Higher National in Engineering are aware that these skills will be required throughout their studies, and as part of learning activities and assessments to ensure their skills are in line with current industry standards.

2.7 How Higher Nationals in Engineering provide both transferable employability skills and academic study skills

Students need both good qualifications and employability skills to enhance their career prospects and personal development. Pearson Higher National engineering qualifications embed throughout the programme, the development of key skills, attributes and strengths required by 21st century employers.

Where employability skills are referred to in this specification, this generally refers to skills in three main categories:

- **Cognitive and problem-solving skills:** critical thinking, approaching non-routine problems by applying expert and creative solutions, use of systems and digital technology, generating and communicating ideas creatively.
- **Intra-personal skills:** self-management, adaptability and resilience, self-monitoring and self-development, self-analysis and reflection, planning and prioritising.
- **Interpersonal skills:** effective communication and articulation of information, working collaboratively, negotiating and influencing, self-presentation.

Pearson Example Assessment Briefs make recommendations for a range of real or simulated assessment activities, for example, group work where appropriate, to encourage development of collaborative and interpersonal skills or a solution focused case study to provide the opportunity to develop cognitive skills. There are specific requirements for the assessment of these skills, as relevant, within the assessment grids for each unit. Example Assessment Briefs are for guidance and support only and **must** be customised and amended according to localised needs and requirements. All assignments must still be moderated as per the internal verification process.

Students can also benefit from opportunities for deeper learning, where they are able to make connections between units and select areas of interest for detailed study. In this way, BTEC Higher Nationals provide a vocational context in which students can develop the knowledge and academic study skills required for particular degree courses and progression to university, including:

- Active research skills
- Effective writing skills
- Analytical skills
- Critical thinking
- Creative problem-solving
- Decision-making
- Team building
- Exam preparation skills
- Digital literacy
- Practical design and build skills
- Experimental and testing techniques
- Competence in assessment methods used in higher education.

To support you in developing these skills in your students, we have developed a map of higher education-relevant transferable and academic study skills, available in *Appendix 3*.

3. Planning your programme

3.1 Delivering the Higher National qualifications

You play a central role in helping your students to choose the right BTEC Higher National qualification.

Assess your students very carefully to ensure that they take the right qualification and the right pathways or optional units, to allow them to progress to the next stage. You should check the qualification structures and unit combinations carefully when advising students.

You will need to ensure that your students have access to a full range of information, advice and guidance in order to support them in making the necessary qualification and unit choices. When students are recruited, you need to give them accurate information on the title and focus of the qualification for which they are studying.

3.2 Entry requirements and admissions

Although Pearson do not specify formal entry requirements, as a centre it is your responsibility to ensure that the students you recruit have a reasonable expectation of success on the programme.

For students who have recently been in education, the entry profile is likely to include one of the following:

- A* to C grade and/or 9 to 4 in GCSE Maths (or equivalent) is strongly recommended.
- A BTEC Level 3 qualification in Engineering
- A GCE Advanced Level profile that demonstrates strong performance in a relevant subject or adequate performance in more than one GCE subject. This profile is likely to be supported by GCSE grades at A* to C and/or 9 to 4 (or equivalent)
- Other related Level 3 qualifications
- An Access to Higher Education Certificate awarded by an approved further education institution
- Related work experience
- An international equivalent of the above.

Centres may wish to consider applicants' prior learning when considering their acceptance on a BTEC Higher Nationals, through Recognition of Prior Learning. (For further information please refer to section 8 of this document.)

English language requirements

Pearson's mission is to help people make more of their lives through learning. In order for students to be successful on Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications which are **both** taught and assessed in English, it is critical that they have an appropriate level of English language skills.

The following clarifies the requirements for all centres when recruiting applicants on to new Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications.

All centres delivering the new Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications must ensure that all students who are non-native English speakers and who have not undertaken their final two years of schooling in English, can demonstrate capability in English at a standard equivalent to the levels identified below, before being recruited to the programme **where the programme is both taught and assessed in English:**

- Common European Framework of Reference (CEFR) level B2
- PTE **51**
- IELTS **5.5**; Reading and Writing must be at **5.5**
- or equivalent.

It is up to the centre to decide what proof will be necessary to evidence individual student proficiency.

The following clarifies the requirements for all centres when recruiting applicants on to new Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications which are taught in a language other than English, but are assessed in English.

All centres delivering the new Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications **wholly or partially** in a language other than English, but who are assessed in English, must ensure that all students can demonstrate capability in English at a standard equivalent to the levels identified below, on completion of the programme:

- Common European Framework of Reference (CEFR) level B2
- PTE **51**
- IELTS **5.5**; Reading and Writing must be at **5.5**
- or equivalent.

It is up to the centre to decide what proof will be necessary to evidence individual student proficiency.

Centre approval

To ensure that centres are ready to assess students and that we can provide the support that is needed all centres must be approved before they can offer these qualifications. For more information about becoming a centre and seeking approval to run our qualifications please visit the support section on our website (<http://qualifications.pearson.com/>).

Level of sector knowledge required

We do not set any requirements for tutors, but we do recommend that centres assess the overall skills and knowledge of the teaching team, which should be relevant, up to date and at the appropriate level.

Resources required

As part of your centre approval, you will need to show that the necessary material resources and work spaces are available to deliver BTEC Higher Nationals. For some units, specific resources are required, this is clearly indicated in the unit descriptors.

HN Global support

HN Global is an online resource that supports centre planning and delivery of BTEC Higher Nationals by providing appropriate teaching and learning resources. For further information see *sections 5 and 6* of this Programme Specification.

Modes of delivery

Subject to approval by Pearson, centres are free to deliver BTEC Higher Nationals using modes of delivery that meet the needs of their students. We recommend making use of a wide variety of modes, including:

- Full-time
- Part-time
- Blended learning
- Distance learning.

Recommendations for employer engagement

BTEC Higher Nationals are vocational qualifications and as an approved centre you are encouraged to work with employers on the design, delivery and assessment of the course. This will ensure that students enjoy a programme of study that is engaging and relevant, and which equips them for progression. There are suggestions in *section 5.2* about how employers could become involved in delivery and/or assessment, but these are not intended to be exhaustive and there will be other possibilities at a local level.

Support from Pearson

We provide a range of support materials, including Schemes of Work and Example Assessment Briefs, with supporting templates. You will be allocated an External Examiner early in the planning stage, to support you with planning your assessments, and there will be training events and support from our Subject Leads.

Student employability

All BTEC Higher Nationals have been designed and developed with consideration of National Occupational Standards, where relevant, and have been mapped to relevant Professional Body standards.

Employability skills such as team working and entrepreneurialism as well as practical hands-on skills have been built into the design of the learning aims and content. This gives you the opportunity to use relevant contexts, scenarios and materials to enable students to develop a portfolio of evidence demonstrating the breadth of their skills and knowledge in a way that equips them for employment.

3.3 Access to study

This section focuses on the administrative requirements for delivering a BTEC Higher National qualification. It will be of value to Quality Nominees, Programme Leaders and Examinations Officers.

Our policy regarding access to our qualifications is that:

- They should be available to everyone who is capable of reaching the required standards.
- They should be free from any barriers that restrict access and progression.

There should be equal opportunities for all those wishing to access the qualifications. We refer Centres to our Pearson Equality and Diversity Policy, which can be found in the support section of our website (<http://qualifications.pearson.com/>).

Centres are required to recruit students to Higher National programmes with integrity. They will need to make sure that applicants have relevant information and advice about the qualification, to make sure it meets their needs. Centres should review the applicant's prior qualifications and/or experience to consider whether this profile shows that they have the potential to achieve the qualification. For students with disabilities and specific needs, this review will need to take account of the support available to the student during the teaching and assessment of the qualification. For further guidance and advice please refer to *section 9* on reasonable adjustments.

3.4 Student registration and entry

All students should be registered for the qualification, and appropriate arrangements made for internal and external verification. For information on making registrations for the qualification, you will need to refer to the information manual available in the support section of our website (<http://qualifications.pearson.com/>).

Students can be formally assessed only for a qualification on which they are registered. If students' intended qualifications change (for example, if a student decides to choose a different specialist pathway), then the centre must transfer the student to the chosen pathway appropriately. Please note that student work cannot be sampled if the student is not registered or is registered on an incorrect pathway.

3.5 Access to assessment

Assessments need to be administered carefully, to ensure that all students are treated fairly, and that results and certification are issued on time, to allow students to move on to chosen progression opportunities.

Our equality policy requires that all students should have equal opportunity to access our qualifications and assessments, and that our qualifications are awarded in a way that is fair to every student. We are committed to making sure that:

- Students with a protected characteristic (as defined in legislation) are not, when they are undertaking one of our qualifications, disadvantaged in comparison to students who do not share that characteristic.
- All students achieve the recognition they deserve for undertaking a qualification and that this achievement can be compared fairly to the achievement of their peers.

Further information on access arrangements can be found on the Joint Council for Qualifications website (<http://www.jcq.org.uk/>).

3.6 Administrative arrangements for internal assessment

Records

You are required to retain records of assessment for each student. Records should include assessments taken, decisions reached and any adjustments or appeals. Further information on quality and assessment can be found in our UK and international guides available in the support section on our website (<http://qualifications.pearson.com/>).

We may ask to audit your records, so they must be retained as specified. All student work must be retained for a **minimum of 12 weeks** after certification has taken place.

Reasonable adjustments to assessment

A reasonable adjustment is one that is made before a student takes an assessment, to ensure that he or she has fair access to demonstrate the requirements of the assessments.

You are able to make adjustments to internal assessments to take account of the needs of individual students. In most cases this can be achieved through a defined time extension or by adjusting the format of evidence. We can advise you if you are uncertain as to whether an adjustment is fair and reasonable. You need to plan for time to make adjustments, if necessary.

Further details on how to make adjustments for students with protected characteristics are available on the support section of our website (<http://qualifications.pearson.com/>).

Special consideration

Special consideration is given after an assessment has taken place for students who have been affected by adverse circumstances, such as illness, and require an adjustment of grade to reflect normal level of attainment. You must operate special consideration in line with Pearson policy (see previous paragraph). You can provide special consideration related to the period of time given for evidence to be provided or for the format of the assessment (if it is equally valid). You may not substitute alternative forms of evidence to that required in a unit, or omit the application of any assessment criteria to judge attainment. Pearson can only consider applications for special consideration in line with the policy, which can be found in the document linked above.

Please note that your centre must have a policy for dealing with mitigating circumstances if students are affected by adverse circumstances, such as illness, which has resulted in non-submission or a late submission of assessment.

Appeals against assessment

Your centre must have a policy for dealing with appeals from students. These appeals may relate to assessment decisions being incorrect or assessment not being conducted fairly. The first step in such a policy could be a consideration of the evidence by a Programme Leader or other member of the programme team. The assessment plan should allow time for potential appeals after assessment decisions have been given to students. If there is an appeal by a student, you must document the appeal and its resolution. Students have a final right of appeal to Pearson, but only if the procedures that you have put in place have been followed.

Further details of our policy on enquiries and appeals is available on the support section of our website (<http://qualifications.pearson.com/>).

If your centre is located in England or Wales and you are still dissatisfied with the final outcome of your appeal you can make a further appeal to the office of the Independent Adjudicator (OIA) by emailing: enquiries@oiahe.org.uk. In Northern Ireland a further appeal may be lodged with the Northern Ireland Public Service Ombudsman (NIPSO) by emailing: nipso@nipso.org.uk.

3.7 Dealing with malpractice in assessment

'Malpractice' means acts that undermine the integrity and validity of assessment, the certification of qualifications, and/or that may damage the authority of those responsible for delivering the assessment and certification. Malpractice may arise or be suspected in relation to any unit or type of assessment within the qualification.

Pearson does not tolerate actions (or attempted actions) of malpractice by students, centre staff or centres in connection with Pearson qualifications. Pearson may impose penalties and/or sanctions on students, centre staff or centres where incidents (or attempted incidents) of malpractice have been proven.

Further details regarding malpractice and advice on preventing malpractice by students, can be found in the support section of our website (<http://qualifications.pearson.com/>).

In the interests of students and centre staff, centres need to respond effectively and openly to all requests relating to an investigation into an incident of suspected malpractice. The procedures we ask you to adopt when tackling malpractice vary between units that are internally assessed and those that are externally assessed.

Internally assessed units

Centres are required to take steps to prevent malpractice and to investigate instances of suspected malpractice. Students must be given information that explains what malpractice is for internal assessment and how suspected incidents will be dealt with by the centre. Full information on dealing with malpractice and the actions we expect you to take is available on the support section of our website (<http://qualifications.pearson.com/>).

Pearson may conduct investigations if it is believed that a centre is failing to conduct internal assessment according to Pearson policies. The above document gives further information, provides examples, and details the penalties and sanctions that may be imposed.

Student malpractice

Heads of centres are required to report incidents of any suspected student malpractice that occur during Pearson external assessments. We ask that centres do so by completing *JCQ Form M1* from the Joint Council for Qualifications website (<http://www.jcq.org.uk/>) and emailing it, along with any accompanying documents, (signed statements from the student, invigilator, copies of evidence, etc.), to the Investigations Team at pqsmalpractice@pearson.com. The responsibility for determining appropriate sanctions or penalties to be imposed on students lies with Pearson.

Students must be informed at the earliest opportunity of the specific allegation and the centre's malpractice policy, including the right of appeal. Students found guilty of malpractice may be disqualified from the qualification for which they have been entered with Pearson.

Tutor/centre malpractice

Heads of centres are required to inform Pearson's Investigations Team of any incident of suspected malpractice by centre staff, before any investigation is undertaken. Heads of centres are requested to inform the Investigations Team by submitting a *JCQ M2b* form (downloadable from <http://www.jcq.org.uk/>) with supporting documentation to pqsmalpractice@pearson.com. Where Pearson receives allegations of malpractice from other sources (for example, Pearson staff or anonymous informants), the Investigations Team will conduct the investigation directly or may ask the head of centre to assist.

Incidents of maladministration (accidental errors in the delivery of Pearson qualifications that may affect the assessment of students) should also be reported to the Investigations Team, using the same method.

Heads of centres/Principals/Chief Executive Officers or their nominees are required to inform students and centre staff suspected of malpractice of their responsibilities and rights; see *6.15 of JCQ Suspected Malpractice in Examinations and Assessments Policies and Procedures* (www.jcq.org.uk).

Pearson reserves the right in cases of suspected malpractice to withhold the issue of results and/or certificates while an investigation is in progress. Depending on the outcome of the investigation, results and/or certificates may be released or withheld. We reserve the right to withhold certification when undertaking investigations, audits and quality assurances processes. You will be notified within a reasonable period of time if this occurs.

Sanctions and appeals

Wherever malpractice is proven, we may impose sanctions or penalties.

Where student malpractice is evidenced, penalties may be imposed such as:

- Disqualification from the qualification
- Being barred from registration for Pearson qualifications for a specified period of time.

If we are concerned about your centre's quality procedures, we may impose sanctions such as:

- Working with you to create an improvement action plan
- Requiring staff members to receive further training
- Placing temporary blocks on your certificates
- Placing temporary blocks on registrations of students
- Debarring staff members or the centre from delivering Pearson qualifications
- Suspending or withdrawing centre approval status.

Your centre will be notified if any of these apply.

Pearson has established procedures for centres that are considering appeals against penalties and sanctions arising from malpractice. Appeals against a decision made by Pearson will normally be accepted only from heads of centres (on behalf of students and/or members or staff) and from individual members (in respect of a decision taken against them personally). Further information on appeals can be found in our Enquiries and Appeals Policy available in the support section on our website (<http://qualifications.pearson.com/>).

In the initial stage of any aspect of malpractice, please notify the Investigations Team by email (pqsmalpractice@pearson.com), who will inform you of the next steps.

4. Programme structure

4.1 Units, Credits, Total Qualification Time (TQT) and Guided Learning (GL)

The Higher National Certificate (HNC) is a Level 4 qualification made up of 120 credits. It is usually studied full-time over one year, or part-time over two years.

The Higher National Diploma (HND) is a Level 4 and Level 5 qualification made up of 240 credits. It is usually studied full-time over two years, or part-time over four years.

Pearson would expect that an HND student would have achieved at least 90 credits at Level 4 before progressing to Level 5 units. This allows for the students to submit the remaining 30 credits at Level 4 while undertaking their Level 5 study.

Students undertaking an HND who fail to successfully complete the full qualification may be awarded an HNC, if their credit achievement permits.

BTEC Higher Nationals consist of core units, specialist units and optional units:

- Core units are mandatory
- Specialist units are designed to provide a specific occupational focus to the qualification and are aligned to Professional Body standards
- Required combinations of units are clearly set out in the tables below.

All units are usually 15 credits in value, or a multiple thereof. These units have been designed from a learning time perspective, and are expressed in terms of **Total Qualification Time (TQT)**. TQT is an estimate of the total amount of time that could reasonably be expected to be required for a student to achieve and demonstrate the achievement of the level of attainment necessary for the award of a qualification. TQT includes undertaking each of the activities of Guided Learning, Directed Learning and Invigilated Assessment. Each 15-credit unit approximates to a TQT of 150 hours and 60 hours of Guided Learning.

Total Qualification Time (TQT) Higher National Certificate (HNC) = 1,200 hours

Total Qualification Time (TQT) Higher National Diploma (HND) = 2,400 hours

Examples of activities which can contribute to TQT include:

- Guided Learning
- Independent and unsupervised research/learning
- Unsupervised compilation of a portfolio of work experience
- Unsupervised e-learning
- Unsupervised e-assessment
- Unsupervised coursework
- Watching a pre-recorded podcast or webinar
- Unsupervised work-based learning.

Guided Learning (GL) is defined as the time when a tutor is present to give specific guidance towards the learning aim being studied on a programme. This definition includes lectures, tutorials and supervised study in, for example, open learning centres and learning workshops. Guided Learning includes any supervised assessment activity; this includes invigilated examination and observed assessment and observed work-based practice.

Total Guided Learning (GL) Higher National Certificate (HNC) = 480 hours

Total Guided Learning (GL) Higher National Diploma (HND) = 960 hours

Some examples of activities which can contribute to GL include:

- Classroom-based learning supervised by a tutor
- Work-based learning supervised by a tutor
- Live webinar or telephone tutorial with a tutor in real time
- E-learning supervised by a tutor in real time
- All forms of assessment which take place under the immediate guidance or supervision of a tutor or other appropriate provider of education or training, including where the assessment is competence-based and may be turned into a learning opportunity.

4.2 Programme structures

The programme structures specify:

- The total credit value of the qualification
- The minimum credit to be achieved at the level of the qualification
- The core units
- The specialist units
- The optional units
- The maximum credit value in units that can be centre commissioned.

When combining units for a Pearson Higher National qualification, it is the centre's responsibility to make sure that the correct combinations are followed.

Each pathway has a core of units, four at Level 4 and two at Level 5, which are mandatory and cannot be changed or substituted.

Each pathway, except General Engineering, also has a number of specialist units which are selected and recommended to provide an appropriate amount of subject specific content for that pathway title and level. In the case of the Operations pathway, specialist units may only be selected from the designated specialist unit list.

All specialist units are also available for selection as optional units in all other pathways.

Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering

- Qualification credit value: a minimum of 120 credits. This is made up of eight units, each with a value of 15 credits.
- **Total Qualification Time (TQT)** Higher National Certificate (HNC) = 1,200 hours
- **Total Guided Learning Hours (GLH)** Higher National Certificate (HNC) = 480 hours
- There is a required mix of core, specialist and optional units totalling 120 credits. All units are at Level 4.
- In some cases a maximum of 30 credits from a Higher National qualification may be from units designed by the centre and approved by Pearson. Core Units may **not** be substituted and are **mandatory**. For more information please refer to Higher National Commissioned Qualifications
- Please note that some specialist units are available as optional units and some optional units are available as specialist units.

The pathways and unit combinations are as follows (for the list of optional Units for all pathways at Level 4, please see pages that follow):

Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering (Electrical and Electronic Engineering) (120 credits)		Unit credit	Level
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	1 Engineering Design	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	2 Engineering Maths	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	3 Engineering Science	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	4 Managing a Professional Engineering Project (Pearson-set)	15	4
Specialist <i>Mandatory</i>	19 Electrical and Electronic Principles	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4

Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering (General Engineering) (120 credits)		Unit credit	Level
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	1 Engineering Design	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	2 Engineering Maths	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	3 Engineering Science	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	4 Managing a Professional Engineering Project (Pearson-set)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4

Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering (Manufacturing Engineering) (120 credits)		Unit credit	Level
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	1 Engineering Design	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	2 Engineering Maths	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	3 Engineering Science	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	4 Managing a Professional Engineering Project (Pearson-set)	15	4
Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	14 Production Engineering for Manufacture	15	4
Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	17 Quality and Process Improvement*	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4

*specialist unit also available as an optional unit.

Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering (Mechanical Engineering) (120 credits)		Unit credit	Level
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	1 Engineering Design	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	2 Engineering Maths	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	3 Engineering Science	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	4 Managing a Professional Engineering Project (Pearson-set)	15	4
Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	8 Mechanical Principles*	15	4
Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	13 Fundamentals of Thermodynamics and Heat Engines*	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below) <i>Note: If the student has no prior practical experience then it is recommended that Unit 10 Mechanical Workshop Practices is the selected optional unit.</i>	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4

*specialist unit also available as an optional unit

Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering (Operations Engineering) (120 credits)		Unit credit	Level
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	1 Engineering Design	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	2 Engineering Maths	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	3 Engineering Science	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	4 Managing a Professional Engineering Project (Pearson-set)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from Optional Unit Bank Group B (see below)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from Optional Unit Bank Group B (see below)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from Optional Unit Bank Group B (see below)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4

Higher National Certificate Optional Units		Unit credit	Level
Optional units Level 4:			
Optional Unit Bank Group B: Operations Engineering			
Optional	29 Electro, Pneumatic and Hydraulic Systems	15	4
Optional	30 Operations and Plant Management	15	4
Optional	31 Electrical Systems and Fault Finding	15	4
Optional	32 CAD for Maintenance Engineers	15	4
General Optional Bank Level 4: All other pathways			
Optional	5 Renewable Energy	15	4
Optional	6 Mechatronics	15	4
Optional	7 Machining and Processing of Engineering Materials	15	4
Optional	8 Mechanical Principles*	15	4
Optional	9 Materials, Properties and Testing	15	4
Optional	10 Mechanical Workshop Practices	15	4
Optional	11 Fluid Mechanics	15	4
Optional	12 Engineering Management	15	4
Optional	13 Fundamentals of Thermodynamics and Heat Engines*	15	4
Optional	14 Production Engineering for Manufacture*	15	4
Optional	15 Automation, Robotics and Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs)	15	4

Optional	16 Instrumentation and Control Systems	15	4
Optional	17 Quality and Process Improvement*	15	4
Optional	18 Maintenance Engineering	15	4
Optional	19 Electrical and Electronic Principles*	15	4
Optional	20 Digital Principles	15	4
Optional	21 Electrical Machines	15	4
Optional	22 Electronic Circuits and Devices*	15	4
Optional	23 Computer Aided Design and Manufacture (CAD/CAM)	15	4
Optional	29 Electro, Pneumatic and Hydraulic Systems	15	4
Optional	30 Operations and Plant Management	15	4
Optional	31 Electrical Systems and Fault Finding	15	4
Optional	32 CAD for Maintenance Engineers	15	4
Optional	73 Materials Engineering with Polymers	15	4
Optional	74 Polymer Manufacturing Processes	15	4

*optional unit also available as a specialist unit

Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering

The Level 5 Higher National Diploma consists of the Level 4 Higher National Certificate (above) plus an additional 120 credits at Level 5.

- Qualification credit value: a minimum of 240 credits of which 120 credits are at Level 5, and 120 credits are at Level 4 and usually attained via the HNC
- **Total Qualification Time (TQT)** Higher National Diploma (HND) = 2,400 hours
- **Total Guided Learning Hours (GLH)** Higher National Diploma (HND) = 960 hours
- There is a required mix of core, specialist and optional units for each pathway. The core units required for each Level 5 pathway (in addition to the specialist units) are 34 Research Project, which is weighted at 30 credits, and 35 Professional Engineering Management, weighted at 15 credits.
- The requirements of the Higher National Certificate (or equivalent) have to be met. In some cases a maximum of 60 credits can be imported from another RQF Pearson BTEC Higher National qualification and/or from units designed by the centre and approved by Pearson. Core units and specialist units may **not** be substituted.
- Please note that some specialist units are available as optional units and some optional units are available as specialist units.

The pathways and unit combinations are as follows (for the list of optional units for all pathways at Level 5, please see pages that follow):

Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering (Electrical and Electronic Engineering) (240 Credits)		Unit credit	Level
Level 4 units			
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	1 Engineering Design	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	2 Engineering Maths	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	3 Engineering Science	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	4 Managing a Professional Engineering Project (Pearson-set)	15	4

Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	19 Electrical and Electronic Principles	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4
Level 5 units			
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	34 Research Project	30	5
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	35 Professional Engineering Management (Pearson-set)	15	5
Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	39 Further Mathematics*	15	5
Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	44 Industrial Power, Electronics and Storage*	15	5
Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	45 Industrial Systems*	15	5
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from Level 5 Optional Bank (see below)	15	5
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from Level 5 Optional Bank (see below)	15	5

*specialist units also available as optional units

Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering (General Engineering) (240 Credits)		Unit credit	Level
Level 4 units			
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	1 Engineering Design	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	2 Engineering Maths	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	3 Engineering Science	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	4 Managing a Professional Engineering Project (Pearson-set)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4
Level 5 units			
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	34 Research Project	30	5
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	35 Professional Engineering Management (Pearson-set)	15	5
Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	39 Further Mathematics*	15	5
Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	49 Lean Manufacturing*	15	5

Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from Level 5 Optional Bank (see below)	15	5
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from Level 5 Optional Bank (see below)	15	5
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from Level 5 Optional Bank (see below)	15	5

*specialist units also available as optional units

Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering (Manufacturing Engineering) (240 Credits)		Unit credit	Level
Level 4 units			
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	1 Engineering Design	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	2 Engineering Maths	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	3 Engineering Science	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	4 Managing a Professional Engineering Project (Pearson-set)	15	4
Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	14 Production Engineering for Manufacture	15	4
Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	17 Quality and Process Improvement*	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4
Level 5 units			
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	34 Research Project	30	5
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	35 Professional Engineering Management (Pearson-set)	15	5
Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	48 Manufacturing Systems Engineering*	15	5
Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	49 Lean Manufacturing*	15	5

Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	50 Advanced Manufacturing Technology*	15	5
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from Level 5 Optional Bank (see below)	15	5
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from Level 5 Optional Bank (see below)	15	5

*specialist units also available as optional units

Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering (Mechanical Engineering) (240 Credits)		Unit credit	Level
Level 4 units			
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	1 Engineering Design	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	2 Engineering Maths	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	3 Engineering Science	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	4 Managing a Professional Engineering Project (Pearson-set)	15	4
Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	8 Mechanical Principles	15	4
Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	13 Fundamentals of Thermodynamics and Heat Engines	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below) <i>Note: if the student has no prior practical experience then it is recommended that Unit 10: Mechanical Workshop Practices is the selected optional unit.</i>	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4
Level 5 units			
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	34 Research Project	30	5
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	35 Professional Engineering Management (Pearson-set)	15	5
Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	36 Advanced Mechanical Principles	15	5

Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	37 Virtual Engineering*	15	5
Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	39 Further Mathematics*	15	5
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from Level 5 Optional Bank (see below)	15	5
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from Level 5 Optional Bank (see below)	15	5

*specialist units also available as optional units

Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering (Operations Engineering) (240 Credits)		Unit credit	Level
Level 4 units			
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	1 Engineering Design	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	2 Engineering Maths	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	3 Engineering Science	15	4
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	4 Managing a Professional Engineering Project (Pearson-set)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from Optional Unit Bank Group B (see below)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from Optional Unit Bank Group B (see below)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from Optional Unit Bank Group B (see below)	15	4
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)	15	4
Level 5 units			
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	34 Research Project	30	5
Core unit <i>Mandatory</i>	35 Professional Engineering Management (Pearson-set)	15	5
Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	39 Further Mathematics*	15	5
Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	62 Heating, Ventilation, Air Conditioning (HVAC)	15	5

Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	63 Industrial Services	15	5
Specialist unit <i>Mandatory</i>	64 Thermofluids*	15	5
Optional unit	Plus one optional unit from Level 5 optional bank (see below)	15	5

*specialist unit also available as optional unit

Higher National Diploma Optional Units		Unit credit	Level
Optional Unit Bank Group B: Operations Engineering			
Optional	29 Electro, Pneumatic and Hydraulic Systems	15	4
Optional	30 Operations and Plant Management	15	4
Optional	31 Electrical Systems and Fault Finding	15	4
Optional	32 CAD for Maintenance Engineers	15	4
General Optional Bank Level 4: All other pathways			
Optional	5 Renewable Energy	15	4
Optional	6 Mechatronics	15	4
Optional	7 Machining and Processing of Engineering Materials	15	4
Optional	8 Mechanical Principles*	15	4
Optional	9 Materials, Properties and Testing	15	4
Optional	10 Mechanical Workshop Practices	15	4
Optional	11 Fluid Mechanics	15	4
Optional	12 Engineering Management	15	4
Optional	13 Fundamentals of Thermodynamics and Heat Engines*	15	4
Optional	14 Production Engineering for Manufacture*	15	4
Optional	15 Automation, Robotics and Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs)	15	4

Optional	16 Instrumentation and Control Systems	15	4
Optional	17 Quality and Process Improvement*	15	4
Optional	18 Maintenance Engineering	15	4
Optional	19 Electrical and Electronic Principles*	15	4
Optional	20 Digital Principles	15	4
Optional	21 Electrical Machines	15	4
Optional	22 Electronic Circuits and Devices*	15	4
Optional	23 Computer Aided Design and Manufacture (CAD/CAM)	15	4
Optional	29 Electro, Pneumatic and Hydraulic Systems	15	4
Optional	30 Operations and Plant Management	15	4
Optional	31 Electrical Systems and Fault Finding	15	4
Optional	32 CAD for Maintenance Engineers	15	4
Optional	73 Materials Engineering with Polymers	15	4
Optional	74 Polymer Manufacturing Processes	15	4
Level 5 Optional Bank			
Optional unit	36 Advanced Mechanical Principles	15	5
Optional unit	37 Virtual Engineering*	15	5
Optional unit	38 Further Thermodynamics	15	5
Optional unit	39 Further Mathematics*	15	5

Optional unit	40 Commercial Programming Software	15	5
Optional unit	41 Distributed Control Systems	15	5
Optional unit	42 Further PLCs	15	5
Optional unit	43 Further Electrical Machines and Drives	15	5
Optional unit	44 Industrial Power, Electronics and Storage*	15	5
Optional unit	45 Industrial Systems*	15	5
Optional unit	46 Embedded Systems	15	5
Optional unit	47 Analogue Electronic Systems	15	5
Optional unit	48 Manufacturing Systems Engineering*	15	5
Optional unit	49 Lean Manufacturing*	15	5
Optional unit	50 Advanced Manufacturing Technology*	15	5
Optional unit	51 Sustainability	15	5
Optional unit	52 Further Electrical, Electronic and Digital Principles	15	5
Optional unit	53 Utilisation of Electrical Power	15	5
Optional unit	54 Further Control Systems Engineering	15	5

Optional unit	62 Heating, Ventilation, Air Conditioning (HVAC)	15	5
Optional unit	63 Industrial Services	15	5
Optional unit	64 Thermofluids*	15	5

*Optional units are also denoted as a specialist unit in particular pathways

Meeting local needs and centre devised units

Centres should note that the qualifications set out in these specifications have been developed in consultation with centres, employers and relevant professional organisations.

The units are designed to meet the skill needs of the sector and the specialist units allow coverage of the full range of employment within the sector. Centres should make maximum use of the choice available to them within the specialist units to meet the needs of their students, as well as the local skills and training needs.

Where centres identify a specific need that cannot be addressed using the units in this specification, centres can seek approval from Pearson to use units from other BTEC Higher National qualifications on the RQF (refer to the website or your Pearson regional contact for application details). Centres will need to justify the need for importing units from other BTEC Higher National RQF specifications. Meeting local needs applications must be made **in advance** of delivery by 31 January in the year of registration.

The flexibility to import standard units from other BTEC Higher National RQF specifications is **limited to a maximum of 30 credits in a BTEC HNC qualification and a maximum of 60 credits in any BTEC HND qualification**. This is an overall maximum and centres should check the 'Rules of Combination' information for the specific qualification to confirm the actual requirements. These units cannot be used at the expense of the mandatory core units in any qualification, nor can the qualification's rules of combination be compromised. The centre must ensure that approved units are used only in eligible combinations.

Alternatively, centres can seek approval to use centre devised units up to the advised maximum amounts for an HNC or an HND in the rules of combination to meet a specific need. The centre must provide a clear rationale on the progression benefits to students of taking the unit(s) that they are seeking approval for. Pearson will review the application and confirm or deny the request. The centre devised units can be authored by the centre, subject to Pearson's scrutiny and approval process. Alternatively, the centre may seek design and development of these units by Pearson. Applications for approval of centre devised unit(s) must be made one year **in advance** of the first year of centre devised unit(s) delivery. The centre must not deliver and assess centre devised units until they have been approved by Pearson.

For the **Pearson BTEC Higher National Certificate and Diploma in Engineering** the maximum number of credits that can be imported by pathway are as follows:

Qualification	Pathway	Import at Level 4	Import at Level 5
HNC Engineering	Electrical and Electronic Engineering	30	
	General Engineering	30	
	Manufacturing Engineering	30	
	Mechanical Engineering	30	
	Operations Engineering	30	

Qualification	Pathway	Import at Level 4	Import at Level 5
HND Engineering	Electrical and Electronic Engineering	30	30
	General Engineering	30	30
	Manufacturing Engineering	30	30
	Mechanical Engineering	30	30
	Operations Engineering	30	30

4.3 Pearson-Set Assignments

At both Level 4 and Level 5, as part of the Core units, there are Pearson-set assignments. Each year, Pearson will issue a Theme. Centres will develop an assignment, to be internally assessed, to engage students in work related to the Pearson-set Theme.

At Level 4, students will select a Topic to further define their approach to the Theme and assignment. At Level 5, it is expected that students will define their own Topic, in negotiation with tutors, based on the Pearson-set Theme.

For example, from the Higher Nationals in Business:

Theme: "Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR) and its importance for sustainability and competitive advantage"

Level 4 Topics:

- How to start up a socially responsible company
- The impact of CSR on a functional area (e.g. HR, Marketing, Finance) within an organisation to promote profitability and financial sustainability.
- Implementing CSR activities within organisations to meet sustainability objectives.

Centres can find relevant support in the Pearson-set Assignment Guide for the units, and the Theme and Topic release documentation, which will be provided for each level.

The aim of the Pearson-set assignments is to provide a common framework for centres to develop work that will allow cross-sector benchmarking, through the standardisation of student work, and identification and sharing of 'best practice' in higher education teaching and learning. Pearson will share the 'best practice' results with all centres. For further information about Pearson-set assignments and assessment, see *section 6.0 Assessment* in this document.

4.4 Annotated unit descriptor

This is how we refer to the individual units of study that make up a Higher National qualification. Students will study and complete the units included in the programme offered at your centre.

The unit title tells your students what the unit is about. At Level 4 they can expect to achieve a complete grounding in the subject and the knowledge and skills required to continue their studies in the subject at Level 5.

PEARSON

ALWAYS LEARNING

Unit 16: Automation, Robotics and Programmable Logic Controllers

Unit type	Optional
Unit level	4
Credit value	15
TQT	150

All Higher National Certificate units are at Level 4. All Higher National Diploma units are at Level 5.

There are three unit types: core units (which students have to complete to achieve either the Level 4 Certificate or Level 5 Diploma; specialist units (which students have to complete when studying one of the specialist pathways) and optional units which can be chosen.

Introduction

The word automation was not used until the 1940s and it originated in the automotive manufacturing sector as a method designed to reduce labour costs and improve the quality, accuracy and productivity of the finished products. We are all now very familiar with the sight of dancing robots not only in the production of cars but in everything from washing machines to pharmaceuticals. As a result of this technology the products we purchase may have never been touched by human hands and will be produced from a reduction in costs and improvement in quality.

The aim of this unit is for students to investigate how Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs) and industrial robots can be programmed to successfully implement automated engineering solutions.

Among the topics included in this unit are: PLC system operational characteristics; different types of programming languages; types of robots and cell safety features.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to program PLCs and robotic manipulators to achieve a set task; describe the types and uses of PLCs and robots available; write simple PLC programs and program industrial robots with straightforward commands and safety factors.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Analyse the design and operational characteristics of a PLC.
2. Design a simple PLC program by considering PLC information and control techniques.
3. Identify the key elements of industrial robots and be able to program them with straightforward commands to perform a given task.
4. Investigate the

The credit value is related to the Total Qualification Time. It is simple to calculate: 1 credit equals 10 hours of TQT. So 150 hours of TQT equals 15 credits. To complete a Higher National Certificate or Diploma students are expected to achieve the appropriate number of credits.

Some notes on the unit, giving your students an idea of what they can expect to study, and why the unit is likely to be of interest to them.

There are usually four Learning Outcomes for each unit (and sometimes three). The Learning Outcomes are what students are able to do by the time they complete the unit.

ALWAYS LEARNING

TQT stands for Total Qualification Time. This means the total amount of time students can expect to spend completing the unit. It includes the time spent in class at lectures as well as the time spent studying and working on assignments. For more details of TQT see the relevant section in this Programme Specification.

This section covers the content that students can expect to study as they work towards achieving their Learning Outcomes.

PEARSON

ALWAYS LEARNING

Essential Content

LO1 Analyse the design and operational characteristics of a PLC system.

System operational characteristics

Modular, unitary and rack mounted systems.

Characteristics, including; speed, memory, scan time, voltage and current limits.

Input and output devices (digital, analogue).

Interface requirements.

Communication standards (RS-232, RS-422, RS-485, Ethernet).

Internal architecture.

Different types of programming languages (IEC 61131-3).

LO2 Design a simple PLC program by considering PLC information, programming and communication techniques.

Programming language

Signal types.

Number systems (binary, octal, hexadecimal).

Allocation lists of inputs and outputs.

Communication techniques.

Network methods.

Logic functions (AND, OR, XOR).

Associated elements (timers, counters, latches).

Test and debug methods.

Systematic testing and debugging methods

Proper application of appropriate testing and debugging methods

LO3 Investigate the key elements of industrial robots and be able to program them with straightforward commands to perform a given task.

Element considerations

Types of robots.

Mobile robotics.

Tools and end effectors.

Programming methods.

Robot manipulators (kinematics, design, dynamics and control, vision systems, user interfaces).

LO4 Investigate the design and safe operation of a robot within an industrial application.

Safety

Cell safety features

Operating envelope

Operational modes

User interfaces

ALWAYS LEARNING

When assignments are graded the tutor will refer to this table, which connects the unit's Learning Outcomes with the student's work. The assignment may be graded at 'Pass', 'Merit' or 'Distinction' level, depending on the quality of the student's work.

PEARSON

ALWAYS LEARNING

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
LO1 Analyse the design and operational characteristics of a PLC system.		D1 Analyse the internal architecture of a typical PLC to determine its operational applications.
P1 Describe the key differences of PLC construction styles and their typical applications.	M1 Explain the different types of PLC programming languages available.	
P2 Determine the types of PLC input and output devices available.		
P3 Describe the different types of communication links used with PLC's.		
LO2 Design a simple PLC program by considering PLC information, programming and communication techniques.		D2 Design and produce all elements of a PLC program for a given industrial task.
P4 Describe the design elements that have to be considered in the preparation of a PLC programme program	M2 Examine the methods used for testing and debugging the hardware and software.	
P5 Explain how communication connections are correctly used with the PLC.		
LO3 Investigate the key elements of industrial robots and be able to program them with straightforward commands to perform a given task.		D3 Design and produce a robot program for a given industrial task.
P6 Describe the types of industrial robots and their uses in industry.	M3 Explain a given industrial robotic system and make recommendations for improvement.	
P7 Describe the types of robot end effectors available and their applications.		
LO4 Investigate the design and safe operation of a robot within an industrial application.		D4 Design a safe working plan for an industrial robotic cell in a given production process to include a full risk assessment.
P8 Describe the safety systems used within an industrial robotic cell.	M4 Explain the systems in place to ensure safe operation of a given industrial robotic cell.	

ALWAYS LEARNING

Recommended books, articles and online material that support learning. The programme tutor may suggest alternatives and additions, usually with a local application or relevance.

PEARSON ALWAYS LEARNING

Recommended Resources

PEREZ ANDROVER, E. (2012) Introduction to PLCs: A beginner's guide to Programmable Logic Controllers

BOLTON, W. (2015) Programmable Logic Controllers. 5th Ed. Elsevier.

DAWKINS, N. (2014) Automation and Controls: A guide to Automation, Controls, PLC's and PLC Programming. E-book Ed. Nick Dawkins.

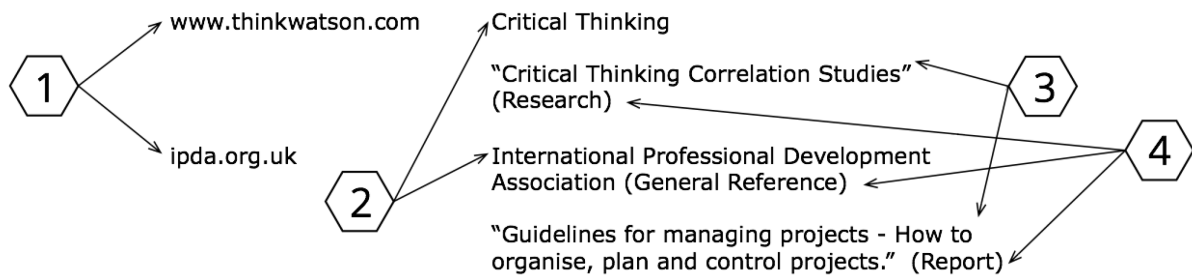
Website based resources – referencing:

Some units have website links as part of their recommended resources lists. Hyperlinking to these resources directly can be problematic as locations and addresses of resources can change over time. To combat this we have referenced website based resources as follows:

1. A link to the main page of the website
2. The title of the site
3. The name of the section or element of the website where the resource can be found
4. The type of resource it is. This could be one of the following:
 - Research
 - General reference
 - Tutorials
 - Training
 - eBooks
 - Report
 - Wiki
 - Article
 - Datasets
 - Development tool
 - Discussion forum.

Some examples from computing units have been shown below:

Websites



4.5 Professional Body collaboration

In redeveloping the BTEC Higher National qualifications in Engineering, we have worked closely with the Engineering Council guidelines and the following Professional Bodies:

- Royal Aeronautical Society
- Royal Academy of Engineering
- Society of Operations Engineers
- The Institute of Engineering and Technology
- The Institute of the Motor Industry

5. Teaching and learning

The aim of this section is to provide guidance to centres so they can engage students in a dynamic, interactive and reflective learning experience. This experience should effectively prepare students to successfully engage in the assessments, which will measure depth, as well as breadth, of knowledge. Teaching should stimulate academic engagement, develop challenging yet constructive discourse and encourage students to reflect on their own performance in preparation for a professional career. Additionally, centres are encouraged to expose students to autonomous and independent learning, which will facilitate the development of the academic skills, experiences and techniques required as they progress from one level of study to the next.

Centres are encouraged to develop programmes that have a distinctive focus on entry into work; delivering a curriculum that embeds employability, has a strong commitment to ethics and diversity, and introduces students to contemporary as well as seminal research. All teaching and learning should reflect the expectations of employers and society and be informed and guided by external benchmarks such as Professional and Statutory Bodies. In so doing students completing a Higher National in Engineering will have the attributes, skills, principles and behaviours that will enable them to make a valuable contribution to local, national and international engineering.

The contributions students make to their own experiences, alongside the experience of their peers, is invaluable. Student engagement and the student voice should form a significant aspect of a student's life. Centres are encouraged to counsel student opinions on a range of teaching and learning matters, which would be used to inform and enhance future practice within a programme of study and within a centre.

5.1 Delivering quality and depth

A high quality teaching and learning experience should include qualified and experienced tutors, an interactive and engaging curriculum, motivated and inspired students, and a support system that caters for the pastoral as well as academic interests of students.

In addition to delivering a quality learning experience, centres must also encourage students to have a deeper understanding of the subject where they are able to go beyond the fundamentals of explaining and describing. Students are expected to show they can analyse data and information, make sense of this and then reach evaluative judgements. At the higher levels of study there is an expectation that students will be able to apply a degree of criticality to their synthesis of knowledge. This criticality would come from exposure to appropriate and relevant theories, concepts and models.

One of the reasons for delivering a quality learning experience, which has depth as well as breadth, is the accreditation of the Higher Nationals in Engineering on Ofqual's qualification framework (RQF) and benchmarking to the Framework for Higher Education Qualifications (FHEQ). The first stage of a Higher National in Engineering is the Higher National Certificate (HNC), which is aligned with Level 4 of both frameworks, with the Higher National Diploma (HND) aligned with Level 5. This means that the HNC has the same level of demand and expectations as the first year of a degree programme, with the HND having the same level of demand and expectations as the second year of a degree programme.

Centres are expected to provide a broadly similar experience for students to that which they would have if they had attended a similar programme at a university. This could mean:

- providing access to a library which has, as a minimum, available copies (physically and/or electronically) of all required reading material
- access to research papers and journals
- utilising a virtual learning environment (VLE) to support teaching
- working with local employers (see below) to present real-life case studies
- creating schemes of work that embrace a range of teaching and learning techniques
- listening to the student voice.

Irrespective of the type of programme on which a student is enrolled, it is highly advisable that students are inducted onto their Higher National programme. This induction should include an introduction to the learning and academic study skills that will be essential in supporting their research and studies, and, therefore, enhance the learning experience.

An induction programme should consist of the following:

- course programme overview
- preparing for lessons
- effective engagement in lectures and seminars
- making the most of their tutor
- assignment requirements
- referencing and plagiarism
- centre policies
- academic study skills.

Pearson offer Higher National Global Study Skills to all students. This is an online toolkit that supports the delivery, assessment and quality assurance of BTECs in centres. This is available on the HN Global website www.highernationals.com. HN Global provides a wealth of support to ensure that tutors and students have the best possible experience during their course.

In addition, there is a wide range of free-to-access websites that can be used to support students in developing their learning and academic study skills.

5.2 Engaging with employers

Just as the student voice is important, so too is the employer's. Employers play a significant role in the design and development of all regulated qualifications, including the Higher Nationals in Engineering. This input should extend into the learning experience, where engagement with employers will add value to students, particularly in transferring theory into practice.

Centres should consider a range of employer engagement activities. These could include:

- field trips to local engineering facilities
- inviting members of the local engineering community to present guest lectures
- using practising engineers to judge the quality of assessed presentations
- involving students in public events such as the Shell Mileage Marathon.

While detailed guidance on assessment has been provided in this specification (see *section 6*), it is worth considering the involvement of employers when determining assessment strategies and the use of different assessment methods. This would enable centres to design assessments that are more closely related to what students would be doing in the workplace. Employers would be able to comment on relevance and content, as well as the challenge presented by an assessment. Notwithstanding this, ultimately it is the centre's responsibility to judge the extent to which any employer contributes to teaching and learning.

5.3 Engaging with students

Students are integral to teaching and learning. As such, it is important they are involved as much as possible with most aspects of the programme on to which they are enrolled. This input could include taking into account their views on how teaching and learning will take place, their role in helping to design a curriculum, or on the assessment strategy that will test their knowledge and understanding.

There are many ways in which to capture the student voice and student feedback, both formal and informal. Formal mechanisms include the nomination of student representatives to act as the collective student voice for each student cohort, student representation at course team meetings, and an elected higher education representative as part of the Student Union. Student forums should also take place periodically throughout the year with minutes and action plans updated and informing the overall annual course monitoring process. Unit specific feedback can also be collated by students completing unit feedback forms, end of year course evaluations and scheduled performance review meetings with their tutor.

However, this should not be the only time when feedback from students is sought. Discourse with students should be constant, whereby tutors adopt a 'reflection on action' approach to adjust teaching, so that students are presented with an environment that is most supportive of their learning styles. Just as employers could have an input into assessment design, so too could students. This will support the development of assignments that are exciting and dynamic, and fully engage students in meaningful and informative assessment.

The biggest advantage of consulting students on their teaching, learning and assessment is securing their engagement in their own learning. Students are likely to feel empowered and develop a sense of ownership of all matters related to teaching, learning and assessment, not just their own experiences. Students could also view themselves as more accountable to their lecturers, ideally seeing themselves as partners in their own learning and not just part of a process.

5.4 Planning and structuring a programme

Learning should be challenging yet exciting; teaching should be motivating and inspirational. Consequently, both teaching and learning should form part of a programme structure that is active, flexible and progressive, and has an industry focus wherever possible.

It is important for a programme structure to be effectively planned, taking into account the nature of the student cohort, the primary mode of delivery (face-to-face or distance learning) and the level of study. It is also advisable to consider the student voice (whether that voice is heard through end of programme feedback, or through on-going dialogue) when planning how and when students will be exposed to a particular subject. One other vital source of information that centres would do well to embrace is the feedback from tutors who have been and/or will be delivering learning.

It is recommended that centres establish a programme planning forum where various stakeholders are represented. This forum could consider different perspectives of teaching and learning and how these are planned into an effective programme structure. Consideration could be given to, for example, the holistic and consistent use of Virtual Learning Environments, a programme of field trips, a strategy for engaging with employers, and how and when to assess learning.

Consideration should be given to a number of factors when planning a programme structure. These include:

- the sequencing of units
- whether to have condensed or expanded delivery
- teaching and learning techniques.

5.4.1 Sequencing units

The level of demand embedded within a unit is benchmarked to recognised standards. This applies to all units within a level of study, and this means that all Level 4 units have similar demands, as do all Level 5 units. However, this does not mean that units can, or should, be delivered in any order. It is strongly advised that Level 4 units are delivered, and achieved by students before progression to Level 5. However, students are able to progress to Level 5 with a minimum of 90 credits at Level 4.

Within each level it is advisable to sequence units so that those providing fundamental knowledge and understanding are scheduled early in the programme. It may also be advisable to schedule the assessment of units requiring the practice and application of more advanced skills later in the programme.

For example, at Level 4, Units 1 Engineering Design, 2 Engineering Mathematics and 3 Engineering Science could be the first three units that Higher National Certificate students study.

5.4.2 Condensed or expanded delivery

The next consideration is whether to deliver a unit in a condensed format alongside other units, or to deliver units over an expanded period. The following tables provide examples of this, based on four units being delivered in one teaching block.

Condensed version

Weeks 1 to 6	Week 7	Weeks 8 to 13	Week 14
Unit 1	Assessment	Unit 3	Assessment
Unit 2		Unit 4	

Expanded version

Weeks 1 to 12	Weeks 13 and 14
Unit 1	Assessment
Unit 2	
Unit 3	
Unit 4	

Mixed version:

Week 1	Week 2	Week 3	Week 4	Week 5	Week 6	Week 7	Week 8	Week 9	Week 10	Week 11	Week 12	Week 13	Week 14
Unit 1													Assessment
Unit 2						Assessment	Unit 3						
Unit 4													

The decision to deliver a condensed, expanded or mixed programme would depend on a number of factors, including availability of resources, the subjects to be taught and the requirements of students. Each version has advantages: the condensed version would provide an opportunity for students to gain early success and achievement. This will enhance their self-efficacy, the sense of one's belief in one's ability to succeed, and self-confidence, with tutors being able to identify and respond to less able students early in the teaching and learning cycle.

The advantages of the expanded version include providing a longer timescale for students to absorb new knowledge and therefore, potentially, improve success, and giving tutors an opportunity to coach and support less able students over a longer period of time.

The mixed version, with some units spanning over the entire period and others lasting for shorter periods, provides opportunities for learning in some units to support development in others. This format may be particularly suited to a combination of practical and theoretical units. In all cases, the choice of which type of unit sequence must consider student opportunities as well as staff and physical resources of the centre.

As there are pros and cons to both approaches, the use of a planning forum would help to ensure the most appropriate approach is taken. For example, centres could chose to deliver the first teaching block using the expanded version, with the subsequent teaching block being delivered through a condensed approach.

It should be noted that the above consideration would apply equally to programmes that are being delivered face-to-face or through distance learning.

5.4.3 Drawing on a wide range of delivery techniques

As part of planning the range of delivery techniques that will be used to deliver the syllabus, centres should also consider an appropriate combination of techniques for the subject.

The table below lists, with explanation, some techniques that centres could introduce into a planned programme structure.

Technique	Face-to-face	Distance learning
Lecture and seminars	These are the most common techniques used by tutors. They offer an opportunity to engage with a large number of students, where the focus is on sharing knowledge through the use of presentations.	Delivery would be through video conferencing and/or pre-recorded audio and/or visual material, available through an online platform. Synchronous discussion forums could also be used.
Practical demonstrations	Demonstration by a qualified operator of the appropriate and safe operation of both production and testing equipment.	Delivery would normally occur when the students are physically present when the demonstration takes place, to allow interaction and questioning. In exceptional cases pre-recorded video material may be used.
Workshops	These are used to build on knowledge shared via tutors and seminars. Teaching can be more in-depth where knowledge is applied, for example, to case studies or real-life examples. Workshops could be student-led, where students present, for example, findings from independent study.	While more challenging to organise than for face-to-face delivery, workshops should not be dismissed. Smaller groups of three or four students could access a forum simultaneously and engage in the same type of activity as for face-to-face.

Technique	Face-to-face	Distance learning
Tutorials	These present an opportunity for focused one-to-one support, where teaching is led by an individual student's requirements. These can be most effective in the run up to assessment, where tutors can provide more focused direction, perhaps based on a formative assessment.	Other than not necessarily being in the same room as a student, tutors could still provide effective tutorials. Video conferencing tools such as Google+ or Skype provide the means to see a student, which makes any conversation more personal.
Virtual Learning Environments (VLEs)	These are invaluable to students studying on a face-to-face programme. Used effectively, VLEs not only provide a repository for taught material such as presentation slides or handouts, but could be used to set formative tasks such as quizzes. Further reading could also be located on a VLE, along with a copy of the programme documents, such as the handbook and assessment timetable.	Where students are engaged with online delivery through distance or blended learning a VLE is a must, as this would be the primary or the key source of learning. Where distance learning is primarily delivered through hard copies of workbooks, etc., the same principle would apply as for face-to-face learning.
Blended learning	The combination of traditional face-to-face learning and online learning. This can enable the students to gain personalised support, instruction and guidance while completing assigned activities and tasks remotely.	Offline learning enables students to develop autonomy and self-discipline by completing set activities and tasks with limited direction and traditional classroom-based constraints.
Work-based learning	Any opportunity to integrate work-based learning into a curriculum should be taken. This adds realism and provides students with an opportunity to link theory to practice in a way in which case studies do not. Many full-time students are involved in some form of employment, either paid or voluntary, which could be used, where appropriate, as part of their learning, for example, when assignments require students to contextualise a response to a real organisation.	It is likely that the majority of distance learning students would be employed and possibly classed as mature students. Bringing theory to life through a curriculum, which requires work-based application of knowledge, would make learning for these students more relevant and meaningful. Perhaps more importantly, assessment should be grounded in a student's place of work, wherever possible.

Technique	Face-to-face	Distance learning
Guest speakers	These could be experts from industry or visiting academics in the subject area that is being studied. They could be used to present a lecture/seminar, a workshop or to contribute to assessment. The key message here would be to make the most effective use of an expert's knowledge and skill by adding value to the teaching and learning experience.	As long as the expert has access to the same platform as the students then the value added contribution would still be very high. Consideration would need to be given to timings and logistics, but with some innovative management this technique would still have a place in distance learning programmes.
Field trips	Effectively planned field trips, which have a direct relevance to the syllabus, will add value to the learning experience. Through these trips students can relate theory to practice, have an opportunity to experience organisations in action, and potentially open their minds to career routes.	The use of field trips can be included as part of a distance learning programme. They will add the same value and require the same planning. One additional benefit of field trips for distance learning is that they provide an opportunity for all students in a cohort to meet, which is a rare occurrence for distance learning students.

5.4.4 Assessment considerations

Centres should embrace the concept of assessment for learning. This is where an assessment strategy requires students to engage with a variety of assessment tools that are accessible, appropriately challenging, and support the development of student self-efficacy and self-confidence. To ensure that assignments are valid and reliable, centres must implement robust quality assurance measures and monitor the effectiveness of their implementation (see section 6 of this Programme Specification). This includes ensuring that all students engage in assessment positively and honestly.

Assessment also provides a learning opportunity for all stakeholders of the assessment to have access to feedback that is both individual to each student and holistic to the cohort. Feedback to students should be supportive and constructive. Student self-efficacy (and therefore self-confidence) can be significantly enhanced where feedback not only focuses on areas for improvement, but recognises the strengths a student has. At the cohort level, similar trends could be identified that could inform future approaches to assessments and teaching. Assessment is an integral part of the overall learning process and assessment strategy must be developed to support effective, reflective, thinking engineering practitioners for the future. Assessment can be formative, summative, or both.

5.4.5 Formative assessment

Formative assessment is primarily developmental in nature and designed to give feedback to students on their performance and progress. Assessment designed formatively should develop and consolidate knowledge, understanding, skills and competencies. It is a key part of the learning process and can enhance learning and contribute to raising standards.

Through formative assessment tutors can identify students' differing learning needs early on in the programme and so make timely corrective interventions. Tutors can also reflect on the results of formative assessment to measure how effective the planned teaching and learning is at delivering the syllabus. Each student should receive one set of written formative feedback, otherwise some students may feel that others are being given more than their share of verbal feedback.

5.4.6 Summative assessment

Summative assessment is where students are provided with the grades contributing towards the overall unit grade. For summative assessment to be effective it should also give students additional formative feedback to support on-going development and improvement in subsequent assessments. All formative assessment feeds directly into summative assessment for each unit and lays the foundations from which students develop the necessary knowledge and skills required for the summative assessment.

5.4.7 Assessment feedback

Effective assessment feedback is part of continuous guided learning which promotes learning and enables improvement. It also allows students to reflect on their performance and helps them understand how to make effective use of feedback. Constructive and useful feedback should enable students to understand the strengths and limitations of their performance, providing positive comments where possible as well as explicit comments on how improvements can be made. Feedback should reflect the learning outcomes and marking criteria to further help students understand how these inform the process of judging the overall grade.

The timing of the provision of feedback and of the returned assessed work also contribute to making feedback effective. Specific turnaround time for feedback should be agreed and communicated with both tutors and students. Timing should provide time for students to reflect on the feedback and consider how to make use of it in forthcoming assessments and take into account the tutor's workload and ability to provide effective feedback.

5.4.8 Designing valid and reliable assessments

To help ensure valid and reliable assignments are designed and that they are consistent across all units, centres could consider a number of actions.

Use of language

The first aspect of an assignment that a centre could focus on is language that makes tasks/questions more accessible to students.

Due consideration must be given to the command verbs used in the learning outcomes of a unit. Assignments must use appropriate command verbs that equate to the demand of the learning outcome. If the outcome requires analysis then evaluative tasks/questions within the assignment must not be set when testing that outcome. This would be viewed as over assessing. Similarly, it is possible to under assess where analytical demands are tested using, for example, explanatory command verbs.

The following can be used as a guide to support assignment design:

- Ensure there is a holistic understanding (by tutors and students) and use of command verbs.
- Set assignment briefs that use a single command verb, focusing on the highest level of demand expected for the learning outcome(s) that is (are) being tested.
- Assignments should be supported by additional guidance that helps students to interpret the demand of the question or task.
- Time-constrained assessments should utilise the full range of command verbs (or acceptable equivalents) appropriate to the academic level.

Consistency

This relates to consistency of presentation and structure, consistent use of appropriate assessment language, and the consistent application of grading criteria. Where assignments are consistent, reliability is enhanced. Where validity is present in assignments this will result in assignments that are fit for purpose and provide a fair and equitable opportunity for all students to engage with the assignment requirements.

Employing a range of assessment tools

Just as variety of teaching is important to the planning of a programme structure, so too is the use of a range of assessment tools appropriate to the unit and its content. Centres should consider taking a holistic view of assessment, ensuring a balanced assessment approach with consideration given to the subject being tested and what is in the best interests of students. As mentioned above, consultation with employers could add a sense of realism to an assessment strategy. (A comprehensive list of assessment tools is provided in section 6.2 Setting effective assessments.)

Some of the assessment tools that could be used are:

- work-based projects
- written assignments
 - reports
 - briefing documents
 - planning documents
 - design documents
 - machine operating instructions in the form of a computer program
 - solutions to engineering problems through discourse and/or calculation
- presentations, vivas, role plays supported by an observer's statement and/or video evidence
- portfolios

- reflective statements
- production of artefacts
- work log books
- witness statements.

No matter what tool is used, assignments should have a sector focus, whether this is in a workplace context or through a case study, and be explicitly clear in their instructions. In the absence of a case study a scenario should be used to provide some context. Finally, students should be clear on the purpose of the assignment and which elements of the unit it is targeting.

6. Assessment

BTEC Higher Nationals in Engineering are assessed using a combination of internally assessed centre-devised internal assignments (which are set and marked by centres) and internally assessed Pearson-set assignments (which are set by Pearson and marked by centres). Pearson-set assignments are mandatory and target particular industry-specific skills. The number and value of these units are dependent on qualification size:

- For the HNC, one core, 15 credit, unit at Level 4 will be assessed by a mandatory Pearson-set assignment targeted at particular skills;
- For the HND, two core units: one core, 15 credit, unit at Level 4 and one core, 30 credit, unit at Level 5, will be assessed by a mandatory Pearson-set assignment targeted at particular skills;
- All other units are assessed by centre-devised assignments.

The purpose and rationale of having Pearson-set units on Higher Nationals is as follows:

- **Standardisation of student work** – Assessing the quality of student work, that it is meeting the level and the requirements of the unit across all centres, that grade decisions and assessor feedback are justified, and that internal verification and moderation processes are picking up any discrepancies and issues.
- **Sharing of good practice** – We will share good practice in relation to themes such as innovative approaches to delivery, the use of digital literacy, enhancement of student employability skills and employer engagement. **These themes will align to those for QAA Higher Education Reviews.**

An appointed External Examiner (EE) for the centre will ask to sample the Pearson-set assignment briefs in advance of the external examination visit. Although this is not a mandatory requirement for centres, we strongly advise that centres seek guidance and support from their EE on the Pearson-set assignments. The EE may also include the Pearson-set units in their sample of student work during their centre visit.

We have taken great care to ensure that the assessment method chosen is appropriate to the content of the unit and in line with requirements from professional bodies, employers and higher education.

In developing an overall plan for delivery and assessment for the programme, you will need to consider the order in which you deliver units, whether delivery will take place over short or long periods of time, and when assessment can take place.

Example Assessment Briefs

Each unit has supporting Example Assessment Briefs that are available to download from the course materials section on our website (<http://qualifications.pearson.com/>). The Example Assessment Briefs are there to give you an example of what the assessment will look like in terms of the content and level of demand of the assessment.

The Example Assessment Briefs, with the exception of the mandatory Pearson-set unit, provide tutors with suggested types of assignment and structure, which can be adopted and, if so, **must be** adapted accordingly.

6.1 Principles of internal assessment

This section gives an overview of the key features of internal assessment and how you, as an approved centre, can offer it effectively. The full requirements and operational information are given in the Pearson Quality Assurance Handbook available in the support section of our website (<http://qualifications.pearson.com/>). All of the assessment team will need to refer to this document.

For BTEC Higher Nationals it is important that you can meet the expectations of stakeholders and the needs of students by providing a programme that is practical and applied. Centres can tailor programmes to meet local needs and should use links with local employers and the wider engineering sector.

When internal assessment is operated effectively it is challenging, engaging, practical and up to date. It must also be fair to all students and meet national standards.

Assessment through assignments

For internally assessed units the format of assessment is an assignment taken after the content of the unit, or part of the unit if several assignments are used, has been fully delivered. An assignment may take a variety of forms, including practical and written types. An assignment is a distinct activity completed independently by students (either alone or in a team). An assignment is separate from teaching, practice, exploration and other activities that students complete with direction from and, formative assessment by, tutors.

An assignment is issued to students as an **assignment brief** with an issue date, a completion date and clear requirements for the evidence that students are expected to provide. There may be specific observed practical components during the assignment period. Assignments can be divided into separate parts and may require several forms of evidence. A valid assignment will enable a clear and formal assessment outcome based on the assessment criteria.

Assessment decisions through applying unit-based criteria

Assessment decisions for BTEC Higher Nationals are based on the specific criteria given in each unit and set at each grade level. The criteria for each unit have been defined according to a framework to ensure that standards are consistent in the qualification and across the suite as a whole. The way in which individual units are written provides a balance of assessment of understanding, practical skills and vocational attributes appropriate to the purpose of the qualifications.

The assessment criteria for a unit are hierarchical and holistic. For example, if a Merit criterion requires the student to show 'analysis' and the related Pass criterion requires the student to 'explain', then to satisfy the Merit criterion a student will need to cover both 'explain' and 'analyse'. The unit assessment grid shows the relationships among the criteria so that assessors can apply all the criteria to the student's evidence at the same time. In *Appendix 5* we have set out a definition of terms that assessors need to understand.

Assessors must show how they have reached their decisions using the criteria in the assessment records. When a student has completed all the assessment for a unit then the assessment team will give a grade for the unit. This is given simply according to the highest level for which the student is judged to have met all the criteria. Therefore:

- to achieve a **Pass**, a student must have satisfied all the Pass criteria for the learning aims, showing coverage of the unit content and, therefore, attainment at Level 4 or 5 of the national framework;
- to achieve a **Merit**, a student must have satisfied all the Merit criteria (and, therefore, the Pass criteria) through high performance in each learning outcome;
- to achieve a **Distinction**, a student must have satisfied all the Distinction criteria (and, therefore, the Pass and Merit criteria), these define outstanding performance across the unit as a whole.

The award of a Pass is a defined level of performance and cannot be given solely on the basis of a student completing assignments. Students who do not satisfy the Pass criteria should be reported as Unclassified.

The assessment team

It is important that there is an effective team for internal assessment. There are three key roles involved in implementing assessment processes in your centre, each with different interrelated responsibilities, and these roles are listed below. Full information is given in the Pearson Quality Assurance Handbook available in the support section of our website (<http://qualifications.pearson.com/>).

- **The Programme Leader** has overall responsibility for the programme, its assessment and internal verification to meet our requirements, record keeping and liaison with the External Examiner. The Programme Leader registers with Pearson annually and acts as an assessor, supports the rest of the assessment team, makes sure they have the information they need about our assessment requirements, and organises training, making use of our guidance and support materials.
- **Internal Verifiers** (IVs) oversee all assessment activity in consultation with the Programme Leader. They check that assignments and assessment decisions are valid and that they meet our requirements. IVs will be standardised by working with the Programme Leader. Normally, IVs are also assessors, but they do not verify their own assessments.
- **Assessors** set or use assignments to assess students to national standards. Before taking any assessment decisions, assessors participate in standardisation activities led by the Programme Leader. They work with the Programme Leader and IVs to ensure that the assessment is planned and carried out in line with our requirements.
- Your **External Examiner** (EE) will sample student work across assessors. Your EE will also want to see evidence of internal verification of assignments and access decisions.

Effective organisation

Internal assessment needs to be well organised so student progress can be tracked and so that we can monitor that assessment is being carried out in line with national standards. We support you in this through, for example, providing training materials and sample documentation. Our online HN Global service can also help support you in planning and record keeping.

It is particularly important that you manage the overall assignment programme and deadlines to make sure that all your students are able to complete assignments on time.

Student preparation

To ensure that you provide effective assessment for your students, you need to make sure that they understand their responsibilities for assessment and the centre's arrangements. From induction onwards you will want to ensure that students are motivated to work consistently and independently to achieve the requirements of the qualifications. They need to understand how assignments are used, the importance of meeting assignment deadlines, and that all the work submitted for assessment must be their own.

You will need to give your students a guide that explains:

- how assignments are used for assessment
- how assignments relate to the teaching programme
- how students should use and reference source materials, including what would constitute plagiarism.

The guide should also set out your approach to operating assessment, such as how students must submit work, the consequences of submitting late work and the procedure for requesting extensions for mitigating circumstances.

6.2 Setting effective assignments

Setting the number and structure of assignments

In setting your assignments you need to work with the structure of assignments shown in the relevant section of a unit. This shows the learning aims and outcomes and the criteria that you must follow.

Pearson provide Example Assessment Briefs for each unit to support you in developing and designing your own assessments, if you wish to do so you can find these materials with the specification on our website.

In designing your own assignment briefs you should bear in mind the following points:

- The number of assignments for a unit must not exceed the number of learning outcomes shown in the unit descriptor. However, you may choose to combine assignments, e.g. to create a single assignment for the whole unit.

- You may also choose to combine all or parts of different units into single assignments, provided that all units and all their associated learning aims are fully addressed in the programme overall. If you choose to take this approach you need to make sure that students are fully prepared, so that they can provide all the required evidence for assessment, and that you are able to track achievement in assessment records.
- A learning outcome must always be assessed as a whole and must not be split into two or more elements.
- The assignment must be targeted to the learning outcomes but the learning outcomes and their associated criteria are not tasks in themselves. Criteria are expressed in terms of the outcome shown in the evidence.

You do not have to follow the order of the learning outcomes of a unit in setting assignments, but later Learning Outcomes often require students to apply the content of earlier learning aims, and they may require students to draw their learning together.

Assignments must be structured to allow students to demonstrate the full range of achievement at all grade levels. Students need to be treated fairly by being given the opportunity to achieve a higher grade, if they have the ability.

As assignments provide a final assessment, they will draw on the specified range of teaching content for the learning outcomes. **The specified unit content must be taught/delivered.** The evidence for assessment need not cover every aspect of the teaching content, as students will normally be given particular examples, case studies or contexts in their assignments. For example, if a student is carrying out one practical operation, or an investigation of one organisation, then they will address all the relevant range of content that applies in that instance.

Providing an assignment brief

A good assignment brief is one that, through providing challenging and authentic sector/work-related tasks, motivates students to provide appropriate evidence of what they have learnt.

An assignment brief should have:

- a vocational scenario: this could be a simple situation or a full, detailed set of vocational requirements that motivates the student to apply their learning through the assignment;
- clear instructions to the student about what they are required to do, normally set out through a series of tasks;
- an audience or purpose for which the evidence is being provided;
- an explanation of how the assignment relates to the unit(s) being assessed.

Forms of evidence

BTEC Higher Nationals have always allowed for a variety of forms of assessment evidence to be used, provided they are suited to the type of learning aim being assessed. For many units, the practical demonstration of skills is necessary and, for others, students will need to carry out their own research and analysis, working independently or as part of a team.

The Example Assessment Briefs give you information on what would be suitable forms of evidence to give students the opportunity to apply a range of employability or transferable skills.

Centres may choose to use different suitable forms of evidence to those proposed. Overall, students should be assessed using varied forms of evidence.

These are some of the main types of assessment:

- written reports
- time constrained assessments
- creation of design documents
- projects
- production of an artefact
- solutions to engineering problems through discourse and/or calculation
- academic posters, displays, leaflets
- PowerPoint (or similar) presentations
- recordings of interviews/role plays
- working logbooks, reflective journals
- presentations with assessor questioning.

(Full definitions of types of assessment are given in *Appendix 5*.)

The form(s) of evidence selected must:

- allow the student to provide all the evidence required for the learning aim(s) and the associated assessment criteria at all grade levels;
- allow the student to produce evidence that is their own independent work;
- allow a verifier to independently reassess the student to check the assessor's decisions.

For example, when you are using performance evidence, you need to think about how supporting evidence can be captured through recordings, photographs or task sheets.

Centres need to take particular care that students are enabled to produce independent work. For example, if students are asked to use real examples, then best practice would be to encourage them to use examples of their own or to give the group a number of examples that can be used in varied combinations.

6.3 Making valid assessment decisions

Authenticity of student work

An assessor must assess only student work that is authentic, i.e. students' own independent work. Students must authenticate the evidence that they provide for assessment through signing a declaration stating that it is their own work. A student declaration must state that:

- Evidence submitted for that assignment is the students own
- The student understands that false declaration is a form of malpractice.

Assessors must ensure that evidence is authentic to a student through setting valid assignments and supervising them during the assessment period. Assessors must also take care not to provide direct input, instructions or specific feedback that may compromise authenticity.

Centres may use Pearson templates or their own templates to document authentication.

During assessment an assessor may suspect that some or all of the evidence from a student is not authentic. The assessor must then take appropriate action using the centre's policies for malpractice. (See section 3.7 in this Programme Specification for further information.)

Making assessment decisions using criteria

Assessors make judgements using the criteria. The evidence from a student can be judged using all the relevant criteria at the same time. The assessor needs to make a judgement against each criterion that evidence is present and sufficiently comprehensive. For example, the inclusion of a concluding section may be insufficient to satisfy a criterion requiring 'evaluation'.

Assessors should use the following information and support in reaching assessment decisions:

- the explanation of key terms in Appendix 4 of this document
- examples of moderated assessed work
- Your Programme Leader and assessment team's collective experience supported by the standardisation materials we provide.

Dealing with late completion of assignments

Students must have a clear understanding of the centre's policy on completing assignments by the deadlines that you give them. Students may be given authorised extensions for legitimate reasons, such as illness, at the time of submission, in line with your centre policies (see also Section 3.6 "Administrative arrangements for internal assessment").

For assessment to be fair, it is important that students are all assessed in the same way and that some students are not advantaged by having additional time or the opportunity to learn from others. Centres should develop and publish their own regulations on late submission; and, this should make clear the relationship between late submission and the centre's mitigating circumstances policy.

Centres may apply a penalty to assignments that are submitted beyond the published deadline. However, if a late submission is accepted, then the assignment should be assessed normally, when it is submitted, using the relevant assessment criteria; with any penalty or cap applied after the assessment. Where the result of assessment may be capped, due to late submission of the assignment, the student should be given an indication of their uncapped mark; in order to recognise the learning that has been achieved, and assessment feedback should be provided in relation to the uncapped achievement.

As with all assessment results, both the uncapped and capped marks should be recorded and ratified by an appropriate assessment board; taking into account any mitigating circumstances that may have been submitted.

Issuing assessment decisions and feedback

Once the assessment team has completed the assessment process for an assignment, the outcome is a formal assessment decision. This is recorded and reported to students. The information given to the student:

- must show the formal decision and how it has been reached, indicating how or where criteria have been met;
- may show why attainment against criteria has not been demonstrated;
- must not provide feedback on how to improve evidence but how to improve in the future.

Resubmission opportunity

An assignment provides the final assessment for the relevant learning outcomes and is normally a final assessment decision. A student who, for the first assessment opportunity, has failed to achieve a Pass for that unit specification **shall be expected to undertake a reassessment**.

- Only one opportunity for reassessment of the unit will be permitted
- Reassessment for coursework, project or portfolio-based assessments shall normally involve the reworking of the original task
- For examinations, reassessment shall involve completion of a new task
- A student who undertakes a reassessment will have their grade capped at a pass for that unit
- A student will not be entitled to be reassessed in any component of assessment for which a Pass grade or higher has already been awarded.

Repeat Units

A student who, for the first assessment opportunity and resubmission opportunity, still failed to achieve a Pass for that unit specification:

- At Centre discretion and Assessment Board, decisions can be made to permit a repeat of a unit.
- The student must study the unit again with full attendance and payment of the unit fee.
- The overall unit grade for a successfully completed repeat unit is capped at a Pass for that unit.
- Units can only be repeated once.

Assessment Boards

Each centre is expected by Pearson to hold Assessment Boards for all of its BTEC Higher National programmes. The main purpose of an Assessment Board is to make recommendations on:

- The grades achieved by students on the individual units
- Extenuating circumstances
- Cases of cheating and plagiarism
- Progression of students on to the next stage of the programme
- The awards to be made to students
- Referrals and deferrals.

Assessment Boards may also monitor academic standards. The main boards are normally held at the end of the session, although if your centre operates on a semester system there may be (intermediate) boards at the end of the first semester. There may also be separate boards to deal with referrals.

Where a centre does not currently have such a process then the External Examiner (EE) should discuss this with the Quality Nominee and Programme Leader, stressing the requirement for Assessment Boards by both Pearson and QAA and that Assessment Board reports and minutes provide valuable evidence for QAA's Review of College Higher Education process

6.4 Planning and record keeping

For internal processes to be effective, an assessment team needs to be well organised and keep effective records. The centre will also work closely with us so that we can quality assure that national standards are being satisfied. This process gives stakeholders confidence in the assessment approach.

The Programme Leader must have an assessment plan, produced as a spreadsheet. When producing a plan the assessment team will wish to consider:

- the time required for training and standardisation of the assessment team;
- the time available to undertake teaching and carrying out of assessment, taking account of when students may complete external assessments and when quality assurance will take place;
- the completion dates for different assignments;
- who is acting as Internal Verifier (IV) for each assignment and the date by which the assignment needs to be verified;
- setting an approach to sampling assessor decisions though internal verification that covers all assignments, assessors and a range of students;
- how to manage the assessment and verification of students' work so that they can be given formal decisions promptly;
- how resubmission opportunities can be scheduled.

The Programme Leader will also maintain records of assessment undertaken. The key records are:

- verification of assignment briefs
- student authentication declarations
- assessor decisions on assignments, with feedback given to students
- verification of assessment decisions.

Examples of records and further information are available in the Pearson Quality Assurance Handbook available in the support section of our website (<http://qualifications.pearson.com>).

6.5 Calculation of the final qualification grade

Conditions for the Award

Conditions for the Award of the HND

To achieve a Pearson BTEC Higher National Diploma qualification a student must have:

- completed units equivalent to 120 credits at level 5;
- achieved at least a pass in 105 credits at level 5;
- completed units equivalent to 120 credits at level 4;
- achieved at least a pass in 105 credits at level 4.

Conditions for the award of the HNC

To achieve a Pearson BTEC Higher National Certificate qualification a student must have:

- completed units equivalent to 120 credits at level 4;
- achieved at least a pass in 105 credits at level 4.

Compensation Provisions

Compensation Provisions for the HND

Students can still be awarded an HND if they have attempted but not achieved a Pass in one of the 15 credit units completed at level 4 and similarly if they have attempted but not achieved a Pass in one of the 15 credit units at level 5. However they must complete and pass the remaining units for an HNC or HND as per the unit rules of combination of the required qualification.

Compensation Provisions for the HNC

Students can still be awarded an HNC if they have not achieved a Pass in one of the 15 credit units completed, but have completed and passed the remaining units.

Calculation of the overall qualification grade

The calculation of the overall qualification grade is based on the student's performance in all units. Students are awarded a Pass, Merit or Distinction qualification grade using the points gained through all 120 credits, at Level 4 for the HNC or Level 5 for the HND, based on unit achievement. The overall qualification grade is calculated in the same way for the HNC and for the HND.

All units in valid combination must have been attempted for each qualification. The conditions of award and the compensation provisions will apply as outlined above. All 120 credits count in calculating the grade (at each level, as applicable).

The overall qualification grade for the HND will be calculated based on student performance in Level 5 units only.

Units that have been attempted but not achieved, and subsequently granted compensation, will appear as 'Unclassified'; i.e. a 'U' grade, on the student's Notification of Performance, that is issued with the student certificate.

Points per credit

Pass: 4

Merit: 6

Distinction: 8

Point boundaries

Grade	Point boundaries
Pass	420–599
Merit	600–839
Distinction	840 +

Modelled Student Outcomes

Level 4 Higher National Certificate

	STUDENT 1					STUDENT 2		STUDENT 3		STUDENT 4		STUDENT 5	
	Credits	Level	Grade	Grade point	Unit points	Grade	Unit points	Grade	Unit points	Grade	Unit points	Grade	Unit points
Core 1	15	4	P	4	60	P	60	P	60	D	120	D	120
Core 2	15	4	P	4	60	P	60	P	60	D	120	M	90
Core 3	15	4	P	4	60	P	60	P	60	D	120	M	90
Core 4	15	4	P	4	60	P	60	M	90	M	90	M	90
Core 5	15	4	M	6	90	P	60	M	90	M	90	M	90
Core 6	15	4	M	6	90	P	60	M	90	M	90	M	90
Opt 1	15	4	M	6	90	M	90	D	120	D	120	D	120
Opt 2	15	4	M	6	90	M	90	D	120	D	120	D	120
TOTAL					600		540		690		870		810
GRADE					M		P		M		D		M

Level 5 Higher National Diploma

	STUDENT 1					STUDENT 2		STUDENT 3		STUDENT 4		STUDENT 5	
	Credits	Level	Grade	Grade point	Unit points	Grade	Unit points	Grade	Unit points	Grade	Unit points	Grade	Unit points
Core 1	15	4	P	0	0	P	0	P	0	D	0	P	0
Core 2	15	4	P	0	0	P	0	P	0	D	0	M	0
Core 3	15	4	P	0	0	P	0	P	0	D	0	M	0
Core 4	15	4	P	0	0	P	0	M	0	M	0	M	0
Core 5	15	4	M	0	0	P	0	M	0	M	0	P	0
Core 6	15	4	M	0	0	P	0	M	0	D	0	U	0
Opt 1	15	4	M	0	0	P	0	D	0	D	0	D	0
Opt 2	15	4	M	0	0	P	0	D	0	D	0	D	0
Core 7	30	5	M	6	180	M	180	M	180	P	120	D	240
Core 8	15	5	M	6	90	M	90	M	90	P	60	D	120
Opt 3	15	5	M	6	90	M	90	D	120	P	60	D	120
Opt 4	15	5	M	6	90	P	60	D	120	P	60	D	120
Opt 5	15	5	M	6	90	P	60	D	120	M	90	M	90
Opt 6	15	5	M	6	90	P	60	M	90	M	90	P	60
Opt 7	15	5			90	P	60	M	90	M	90	M	90
TOTAL	240				720		600		810		570		840
GRADE					M		M		M		P		D

7. Quality assurance

Pearson's quality assurance system for all Pearson BTEC Higher National programmes is benchmarked to Level 4 and Level 5 on the Quality Assurance Agency (QAA) Framework for Higher Education Qualifications (FHEQ). This will ensure that centres have effective quality assurance processes to review programme delivery. It will also ensure that the outcomes of assessment are to national standards.

The quality assurance process for centres offering Pearson BTEC Higher National programmes comprise five key components:

1. The approval process
2. Monitoring of internal centre systems
3. Independent assessment review
4. Annual programme monitoring report
5. Annual student survey.

7.1 The approval process

Centres new to the delivery of Pearson programmes will be required to seek approval initially through the existing centre approval process and then through the programme approval process. Programme approval for new centres can be considered in one of two ways:

- Desk-based approval review
- Review and approval visit to the centre.

Prior to approval being given, centres will be required to submit evidence to demonstrate that they:

- have the human and physical resources required for effective delivery and assessment;
- understand the implications for independent assessment and agree to abide by these;
- have a robust internal assessment system supported by 'fit for purpose' assessment documentation;
- have a system to internally verify assessment decisions, to ensure standardised assessment decisions are made across all assessors and sites.

Applications for approval must be supported by the head of the centre (Principal or Chief Executive, etc.) and include a declaration that the centre will operate the programmes strictly, as approved and in line with Pearson requirements.

Centres seeking to renew their programme approval upon expiry of their current approval period, may be eligible for the Automatic Approval process, subject to the centre meeting the eligibility criteria set out by Pearson.

Regardless of the type of centre, Pearson reserves the right to withdraw either qualification or centre approval when it deems there is an irreversible breakdown in the centre's ability either to quality assure its programme delivery or its assessment standards.

7.2 Monitoring of internal centre systems

Centres will be required to demonstrate on-going fulfilment of the centre approval criteria over time and across all Higher National programmes. The process that assures this is external examination, which is undertaken by External Examiners. Centres will be given the opportunity to present evidence of the on-going suitability and deployment of their systems to carry out the required functions. This includes the consistent application of policies affecting student registrations, appeals, effective internal examination and standardisation processes. Where appropriate, centres may present evidence of their operation within a recognised code of practice, such as that of the Quality Assurance Agency for Higher Education. Pearson reserves the right to confirm independently that these arrangements are operating to Pearson's standards.

Pearson will affirm, or not, the on-going effectiveness of such systems. Where system failures are identified, sanctions (appropriate to the nature of the problem) will be applied, in order to assist the centre in correcting the problem.

7.3 Independent assessment review

The internal assessment outcomes reached for all Pearson BTEC Higher National programmes benchmarked to Level 4 and Level 5 of the Quality Assurance Agency (QAA) Framework for Higher Education Qualifications (FHEQ), are subject to an independent assessment review by a Pearson appointed External Examiner. The outcomes of this process will be:

- to confirm that internal assessment is to national standards and allow certification, OR:
- to make recommendations to improve the quality of assessment outcomes before certification is released, OR:
- to make recommendations about the centre's ability to continue to be approved for the Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications in question.

7.4 Annual programme monitoring report (APMR)

The APMR is a written annual review form that provides opportunity for centres to analyse and reflect on the most recent teaching year. By working in collaboration with centres, the information can be used by Pearson to further enhance the quality assurance of the Pearson BTEC Higher National programmes.

7.5 Annual student survey

Pearson will conduct an annual survey of Pearson BTEC Higher National students. The purpose of the survey is to enable Pearson to evaluate the student experience as part of quality assurance process, by engaging with students studying on these programmes.

7.6 Centre and qualification approval

As part of the approval process, your centre must make sure that the resource requirements listed below are in place before offering the qualification.

Centres must have appropriate physical resources (for example equipment, IT, learning materials, teaching rooms) to support the delivery and assessment of the qualifications.

- Staff involved in the assessment process must have relevant expertise and/or occupational experience.
- There must be systems in place to ensure continuing professional development for staff delivering the qualification.
- Centres must have in place appropriate health and safety policies relating to the use of equipment by staff and students.
- Centres must deliver the qualification in accordance with current equality legislation.
- Centres should refer to the individual unit descriptors, to check for any specific resources required.

The result, we believe, are qualifications that will meet the needs and expectations of students worldwide.

7.7 Continuing Quality Assurance and standards verification

We produce annually the latest version of the Pearson Quality Assurance Handbook available in the support section of our website (<http://qualifications.pearson.com>). It contains detailed guidance on the quality processes required to underpin robust assessment and internal verification.

The key principles of quality assurance are that:

- A centre delivering Pearson BTEC Higher National programmes must be an approved centre, and must have approval for the programmes or groups of programmes that it is delivering.
- The centre agrees, as part of gaining approval, to abide by specific terms and conditions around the effective delivery and quality assurance of assessment; it must abide by these conditions throughout the period of delivery.
- Pearson makes available to approved centres a range of materials and opportunities, through online standardisation; these are intended to exemplify the processes required for effective assessment and provide examples of effective standards. Approved centres must use the materials and services to ensure that all staff delivering BTEC qualifications keep up to date with the guidance on assessment
- An approved centre must follow agreed protocols for standardisation of assessors and verifiers, for the planning, monitoring and recording of assessment processes, and for dealing with special circumstances, appeals and malpractice.

The approach of quality-assured assessment is through a partnership between an approved centre and Pearson. We will make sure that each centre follows best practice and employs appropriate technology to support quality-assurance processes, where practicable. We work to support centres and seek to make sure that our quality-assurance processes do not place undue bureaucratic processes on centres. We monitor and support centres in the effective operation of assessment and quality assurance.

The methods we use to do this for BTEC Higher Nationals include:

- making sure that all centres complete appropriate declarations at the time of approval;
- undertaking approval visits to centres;
- making sure that centres have effective teams of assessors and verifiers who are trained to undertake assessment;
- assessment sampling and verification, through requested samples of assessments, completed assessed student work and associated documentation;
- an overarching review and assessment of a centre's strategy for assessing and quality-assuring its BTEC programmes.

An approved centre must make certification claims only when authorised by us and strictly in accordance with requirements for reporting. Centres that do not fully address and maintain rigorous approaches to quality assurance cannot seek certification for individual programmes or for all BTEC Higher National qualifications.

Centres that do not comply with remedial action plans may have their approval to deliver qualifications removed.

8. Recognition of Prior Learning and Attainment

Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL) is a method of assessment (leading to the award of credit) that considers whether students can demonstrate that they can meet the assessment requirements for a unit through knowledge, understanding or skills they already possess, and so do not need to develop through a course of learning.

Pearson encourages centres to recognise students' previous achievements and experiences whether at work, home and at leisure, as well as in the classroom. RPL provides a route for the recognition of the achievements resulting from continuous learning. RPL enables recognition of achievement from a range of activities using any valid assessment methodology. Provided that the assessment requirements of a given unit or qualification have been met, the use of RPL is acceptable for accrediting a unit, units or a whole qualification. Evidence of learning must be valid and reliable.

For full guidance on RPL please refer to the Recognition of Prior Learning policy document available in the support section of our website (<https://qualifications.pearson.com>).

9. Equality and diversity

Equality and fairness are central to our work. The design of these qualifications embeds consideration of equality and diversity as set out in the qualification regulators' General Conditions of Recognition. Promoting equality and diversity involves treating everyone with equal dignity and worth, while also raising aspirations and supporting achievement for people with diverse requirements, entitlements and backgrounds. An inclusive environment for learning anticipates the varied requirements of students, and aims to ensure that all students have equal access to educational opportunities. Equality of opportunity involves enabling access for people who have differing individual requirements as well as eliminating arbitrary and unnecessary barriers to learning. In addition, students with and without disabilities are offered learning opportunities that are equally accessible to them, by means of inclusive qualification design.

Pearson's equality policy requires all students to have equal opportunity to access our qualifications and assessments. It also requires our qualifications to be designed and awarded in a way that is fair to every student. We are committed to making sure that:

- students with a protected characteristic (as defined in legislation) are not, when they are undertaking one of our qualifications, disadvantaged in comparison to students who do not share that characteristic;
- all students achieve the recognition they deserve from undertaking a qualification and that this achievement can be compared fairly to the achievement of their peers.

Pearson's policy regarding access to its qualifications is that:

- they should be available to everyone who is capable of reaching the required standards;
- they should be free from any barriers that restrict access and progression;
- there should be equal opportunities for all wishing to access the qualifications.

Centres are required to recruit students to Higher National qualifications with integrity. This will include ensuring that applicants have appropriate information and advice about the qualifications, and that the qualification will meet their needs. Centres will need to review the entry profile of qualifications and/or experience held by applicants, considering whether this profile shows an ability to progress to a higher level qualification. Centres should take appropriate steps to assess each applicant's potential and make a professional judgement about their ability to successfully complete the programme of study and achieve the qualification. This assessment will need to take account of the support available to the student within the centre during their programme of study and any specific support that might be necessary to allow the student to access the assessment for the qualification. Centres should consult our policy on students with particular requirements.

Access to qualifications for students with disabilities or specific needs:

Students taking a qualification may be assessed in British Sign Language or Irish Sign Language, where it is permitted for the purpose of reasonable adjustments. Further information on access arrangements can be found in the Joint Council for Qualifications (JCQ) document *Access Arrangements, Reasonable Adjustments and Special Consideration for General and Vocational qualifications*. Details on how to make adjustments for students with protected characteristics are given in the document *Pearson Supplementary Guidance for Reasonable Adjustment and Special Consideration in Vocational Internally Assessed Units*. See the support section our website for both documents (<http://qualifications.pearson.com/>).

10. Higher Nationals Engineering Units

Unit 1: Engineering Design

Unit code	K/615/1475
Unit type	Core
Unit level	4
Credit value	15

Introduction

The tremendous possibilities of the techniques and processes developed by engineers can only be realised by great design. Design turns an idea into a useful artefact, the problem into a solution, or something ugly and inefficient into an elegant, desirable and cost effective everyday object. Without a sound understanding of the design process the engineer works in isolation without the links between theory and the needs of the end user.

The aim of this unit is to introduce students to the methodical steps that engineers use in creating functional products and processes; from a design brief to the work, and the stages involved in identifying and justifying a solution to a given engineering need.

Among the topics included in this unit are: Gantt charts and critical path analysis, stakeholder requirements, market analysis, design process management, modelling and prototyping, manufacturability, reliability life cycle, safety and risk, management, calculations, drawings and concepts and ergonomics.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to prepare an engineering design specification that satisfies stakeholders' requirements, implement best practice when analysing and evaluating possible design solutions, prepare a written technical design report, and present their finalised design to a customer or audience.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Plan a design solution and prepare an engineering design specification in response to a stakeholder's design brief and requirements.
2. Formulate possible technical solutions to address the student-prepared design specification.
3. Prepare an industry-standard engineering technical design report.
4. Present to an audience a design solution based on the design report and evaluate the solution/presentation.

Essential Content

L01 Plan a design solution and prepare an engineering design specification in response to a stakeholder's design brief and requirements

Planning techniques used to prepare a design specification:

Definition of client's/users objectives, needs and constraints

Definition of design constraints, function, specification, milestones

Planning the design task: Flow charts, Gantt charts, network and critical path analysis necessary in the design process

Use of relevant technical/engineering/industry standards within the design process

Design process:

Process development, steps to consider from start to finish

The cycle from design to manufacture

Three- and five-stage design process

Vocabulary used in engineering design

Stage of the design process which includes:

Analysing the situation, problem statement, define tasks and outputs, create the design concept, research the problem and write a specification

Suggest possible solutions, select a preferred solution, prepare working drawings, construct a prototype, test and evaluate the design against objectives, design communication (write a report)

Customer/stakeholder requirements:

Converting customer request to a list of objectives and constraints

Interpretation of design requirements

Market analysis of existing products and competitors

Aspects of innovation and performance management in decision-making

L02 Formulate possible technical solutions to address the student-prepared design specification

Conceptual design and evaluating possible solutions:

Modelling, prototyping and simulation using industry standard software, (e.g. AutoCAD, Catia, SolidWorks, Creo) on high specification computers

Use of evaluation and analytical tools, e.g. cause and effect diagrams, CAD, knowledge-based engineering

L03 Prepare an industry-standard engineering technical design report

Managing the design process:

Recognising limitations including cost, physical processes, availability of material/components and skills, timing and scheduling

Working to specifications and standards, including:

The role of compliance checking, feasibility assessment and commercial viability of product design through testing and validation

Design for testing, including:

Material selection to suit selected processes and technologies

Consideration of manufacturability, reliability, life cycle and environmental issues

The importance of safety, risk management and ergonomics

Conceptual design and effective tools:

Technologies and manufacturing processes used in order to transfer engineering designs into finished products

L04 Present to an audience a design solution based on the design report and evaluate the solution/presentation

Communication and post-presentation review:

Selection of presentation tools

Analysis of presentation feedback

Strategies for improvement based on feedback

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L01 Plan a design solution and prepare an engineering design specification in response to a stakeholder's design brief and requirements		D1 Compare and contrast the completed design specification against the relevant industry standard specification
P1 Produce a design specification from a given design brief P2 Explain the influence of the stakeholder's design brief and requirements in the preparation of the design specification P3 Produce a design project schedule with a graphical illustration of the planned activities	M1 Evaluate potential planning techniques, presenting a case for the method chosen M2 Demonstrate critical path analysis techniques in design project scheduling/planning and explain its use	
L02 Formulate possible technical solutions to address the student-prepared design specification		D2 Evaluate potential technical solutions, presenting a case for the final choice of solution
P4 Explore industry standard evaluation and analytical tools in formulating possible technical solutions P5 Use appropriate design techniques to produce possible design solution	M3 Apply the principles of modelling/ simulation/prototyping, using appropriate software, to develop appropriate design solutions	
L03 Prepare an industry-standard engineering technical design report		D3 Evaluate the effectiveness of the presented industry-standard engineering technical design report for producing a fully compliant finished product
P6 Prepare an industry-standard engineering technical design report P7 Assess the presented technical design and identify any potential limitations it may have	M4 Explain the role of design specifications and standards in producing a finished product M5 Identify any compliance, safety and risk management issues present in the chosen solution	

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Present to an audience a design solution based on the design report and evaluate the solution/presentation		D4 Justify potential improvements to the presented design solution, based on reflection and/or feedback obtained from the presentation
P8 Present the recommended design solution to the identified audience P9 Explain possible communication strategies and presentation methods that could be used to inform the stakeholders of the recommended solution	M6 Reflect on effectiveness of communication strategy in presenting the solution	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

DUL, J. and WEERDMEESTER, B. (2008) *Ergonomics for beginners*. 3rd Ed. Boca Raton: CRC Press.

DYM, C.L., LITTLE, P. and ORWIN, E. (2014) *Engineering Design: a Project Based Introduction*. 4th Ed. Wiley.

GRIFFITHS, B. (2003) *Engineering Drawing for Manufacture*. Kogan Page Science.

REDDY, K.V. (2008) *Textbook of Engineering Drawing*. 2nd Ed. Hyderabad: BS Publications.

Websites

www.epsrc.ac.uk Engineering and Physical Sciences Research Council
(General Reference)

www.imeche.org Institution of Mechanical Engineers
(General Reference)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 23: Computer Aided Design and Manufacture (CAD/CAM)

Unit 34: Research Project

Unit 2: Engineering Maths

Unit code	M/615/1476
Unit type	Core
Unit level	4
Credit value	15

Introduction

The mathematics that is delivered in this unit is that which is directly applicable to the engineering industry, and it will help to increase students' knowledge of the broad underlying principles within this discipline.

The aim of this unit is to develop students' skills in the mathematical principles and theories that underpin the engineering curriculum. Students will be introduced to mathematical methods and statistical techniques in order to analyse and solve problems within an engineering context.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to employ mathematical methods within a variety of contextualised examples, interpret data using statistical techniques, and use analytical and computational methods to evaluate and solve engineering problems.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Identify the relevance of mathematical methods to a variety of conceptualised engineering examples.
2. Investigate applications of statistical techniques to interpret, organise and present data by using appropriate computer software packages.
3. Use analytical and computational methods for solving problems by relating sinusoidal wave and vector functions to their respective engineering applications.
4. Examine how differential and integral calculus can be used to solve engineering problems.

Essential Content

L01 **Identify the relevance of mathematical methods to a variety of conceptualised engineering examples**

Mathematical concepts:

Dimensional analysis

Arithmetic and geometric progressions

Functions:

Exponential, logarithmic, circular and hyperbolic functions

L02 **Investigate applications of statistical techniques to interpret, organise and present data, by using appropriate computer software packages**

Summary of data:

Mean and standard deviation of grouped data

Pearson's correlation coefficient

Linear regression

Probability theory:

Binomial and normal distribution

L03 **Use analytical and computational methods for solving problems by relating sinusoidal wave and vector functions to their respective engineering application.**

Sinusoidal waves:

Sine waves and their applications

Trigonometric and hyperbolic identities

Vector functions:

Vector notation and properties

Representing quantities in vector form

Vectors in three dimensions

L04 Examine how differential and integral calculus can be used to solve engineering problems

Differential calculus:

Definitions and concepts

Definition of a function and of a derivative, graphical representation of a function, notation of derivatives, limits and continuity, derivatives; rates of change, increasing and decreasing functions and turning points

Differentiation of functions

Differentiation of functions including:

- standard functions/results
- using the chain, product and quotient rules
- second order and higher derivatives

Types of function: polynomial, logarithmic, exponential and trigonometric (sine, cosine and tangent), inverse trigonometric and hyperbolic functions

Integral calculus:

Definite and indefinite integration

Integrating to determine area

Integration of common/standard functions and by substitution and parts

Exponential growth and decay

Types of function: algebraic including partial fractions and trigonometric (sine, cosine and tangent) functions

Engineering problems involving calculus:

Including: stress and strain, torsion, motion, dynamic systems, oscillating systems, force systems, heat energy and thermodynamic systems, fluid flow, AC theory, electrical signals, information systems, transmission systems, electrical machines, electronics

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Identify the relevance of mathematical methods to a variety of conceptualised engineering examples			L01 & 2 D1 Present statistical data in a method that can be understood by a non-technical audience
P1 Apply dimensional analysis techniques to solve complex problems P2 Generate answers from contextualised arithmetic and geometric progressions P3 Determine solutions of equations using exponential, trigonometric and hyperbolic functions	M1 Use dimensional analysis to derive equations		
L02 Investigate applications of statistical techniques to interpret, organise and present data by using appropriate computer software packages			
P4 Summarise data by calculating mean and standard deviation, and simplify data into graphical form P5 Calculate probabilities within both binomially distributed and normally distributed random variables	M2 Interpret the results of a statistical hypothesis test conducted from a given scenario		D2 Model the combination of sine waves graphically and analyse the variation in results between graphical and analytical methods
L03 Use analytical and computational methods for solving problems by relating sinusoidal wave and vector functions to their respective engineering application			
P6 Solve engineering problems relating to sinusoidal functions P7 Represent engineering quantities in vector form, and use appropriate methodology to determine engineering parameters	M3 Use compound angle identities to separate waves into distinct component waves		

Pass	Merit	Distinction
LO4 Examine how differential and integral calculus can be used to solve engineering problems		D3 Analyse maxima and minima of increasing and decreasing functions using higher order derivatives
P8 Determine rates of change for algebraic, logarithmic and circular functions P9 Use integral calculus to solve practical problems relating to engineering	M4 Formulate predictions of exponential growth and decay models using integration methods	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

SINGH, K. (2011) *Engineering Mathematics Through Applications*. 2nd Ed. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

STROUD, K.A. and BOOTH, D.J. (2013) *Engineering Mathematics*. 7th Ed. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

Websites

<http://www.mathcentre.ac.uk/> Maths Centre
(Tutorials)

<http://www.mathtutor.ac.uk/> Maths Tutor
(Tutorials)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 39: Further Mathematics

Unit 3: Engineering Science

Unit code T/615/1477

Unit type Core

Unit level 4

Credit value 15

Introduction

Engineering is a discipline that uses scientific theory to design, develop or maintain structures, machines, systems, and processes. Engineers are therefore required to have a broad knowledge of the science that is applicable to the industry around them.

This unit introduces students to the fundamental laws and applications of the physical sciences within engineering and how to apply this knowledge to find solutions to a variety of engineering problems.

Among the topics included in this unit are: international system of units, interpreting data, static and dynamic forces, fluid mechanics and thermodynamics, material properties and failure, and A.C./D.C. circuit theories.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to interpret and present qualitative and quantitative data using computer software, calculate unknown parameters within mechanical systems, explain a variety of material properties and use electromagnetic theory in an applied context.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Examine scientific data using both quantitative and computational methods.
2. Determine parameters within mechanical engineering systems.
3. Explore the characteristics and properties of engineering materials.
4. Analyse applications of A.C./D.C. circuit theorems, electromagnetic principles and properties.

Essential Content

L01 **Examine scientific data using both quantitative and computational methods**

International system of units:

The basic dimensions in the physical world and the corresponding SI base units

SI derived units with special names and symbols

SI prefixes and their representation with engineering notation

Interpreting data:

Investigation using the scientific method to gather appropriate data

Test procedures for physical (destructive and non-destructive) tests and statistical tests that might be used in gathering information

Summarising quantitative and qualitative data with appropriate graphical representations

Using presentation software to present data to an audience

L02 **Determine parameters within mechanical engineering systems**

Static and dynamic forces:

Representing loaded components with space and free body diagrams

Calculating support reactions of objects subjected to concentrated and distributed loads

Newton's laws of motion, D'Alembert's principle and the principle of conservation of energy

Fluid mechanics and thermodynamics:

Archimedes' principle and hydrostatics

Continuity of volume and mass flow for an incompressible fluid

Effects of sensible/latent heat of fluid

Heat transfer due to temperature change and the thermodynamic process equations

L03 Explore the characteristics and properties of engineering materials

Material properties:

Atomic structure of materials and the structure of metals, plastics and composites

Mechanical and electromagnetic properties of materials

Material failure:

Destructive and non-destructive testing of materials

The effects of gradual and impact loading on a material.

Degradation of materials and hysteresis

L04 Analyse applications of A.C./D.C. circuit theorems, electromagnetic principles and properties

D.C. circuit theory:

Voltage, current and resistance in D.C. networks

Exploring circuit theorems (Thevenin, Norton, Superposition), Ohm's law and Kirchhoff's voltage and current laws

A.C. circuit theory:

Waveform characteristics in a single-phase A.C. circuit

RLC circuits

Magnetism:

Characteristics of magnetic fields and electromagnetic force

The principles and applications of electromagnetic induction

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Examine scientific data using both quantitative and computational methods		M1 Explain how the application of scientific method impacts upon different test procedures	D1 Present an analysis of scientific data using both computational and qualitative methods
P1 Describe SI units and prefix notation	P2 Examine quantitative and qualitative data with appropriate graphical representations		
L02 Determine parameters within mechanical engineering systems		M2 Determine unknown forces by applying d'Alembert's principle to a free body diagram	D2 Critically compare how changes in the thermal efficiency of a heat transfer process can affect the behavioural characteristics of a mechanical systems
P3 Determine the support reactions of a beam carrying a concentrated load and a uniformly distributed load	P4 Use Archimedes' principle in contextual engineering applications P5 Determine through practical examples the change within a solid material when exposed to temperature variations		
L03 Explore the characteristics and properties of engineering materials		M3 Review elastic, electrical and magnetic hysteresis in different materials	D3 Compare and contrast theoretical material properties of metal and non-metallic materials compared with values obtained through destructive and non-destructive test methods
P6 Describe the structural properties of metals and non-metals with reference to their material properties	P7 Explain the types of degradation found in metals and non-metals		

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Analyse applications of A.C./D.C. circuit theorems, electromagnetic principles and properties		D4 Critically evaluate different techniques used to solve problems on series-parallel R, L, C circuits using A.C. theory.
P8 Calculate currents and voltages in circuits using circuit theorems. P9 Describe how complex waves are produced from sinusoidal waveforms. P10 Solve problems on series R, L, C circuits with A.C. theory.	M4 Explain the principles and applications of electromagnetic induction.	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

BIRD, J. (2012) *Science for Engineering*. 4th Ed. London: Routledge.

BOLTON, W. (2006) *Engineering Science*. 5th Ed. London: Routledge.

TOOLEY, M. and DINGLE, L. (2012) *Engineering Science: For Foundation Degree and Higher National*. London: Routledge.

Journals

International Journal of Engineering Science.

International Journal of Engineering Science and Innovative Technology.

Websites

<https://www.khanacademy.org/> Khan Academy
Physics
(Tutorials)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 9: Materials, Properties and Testing

Unit 3: Engineering Science

Unit 4: Managing a Professional Engineering Project

Unit code	A/615/1478
Unit type	Core
Unit level	4
Credit value	15

Introduction

The responsibilities of the engineer go far beyond completing the task in hand. Reflecting on their role in a wider ethical, environmental and sustainability context starts the process of becoming a professional engineer – a vital requirement for career progression.

Engineers seldom work in isolation and most tasks they undertake require a range of expertise, designing, developing, manufacturing, constructing, operating and maintaining the physical infrastructure and content of our world. The bringing together of these skills, expertise and experience is often managed through the creation of a project.

This unit introduces students to the techniques and best practices required to successfully create and manage an engineering project designed to identify a solution to an engineering need. While carrying out this project students will consider the role and function of engineering in our society, the professional duties and responsibilities expected of engineers together with the behaviours that accompany their actions.

Among the topics covered in this unit are: roles, responsibilities and behaviours of a professional engineer, planning a project, project management stages, devising solutions, theories and calculations, management using a Gantt chart, evaluation techniques, communication skills, and the creation and presentation of a project report.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to conceive, plan, develop and execute a successful engineering project, and produce and present a project report outlining and reflecting on the outcomes of each of the project processes and stages. As a result, they will develop skills such as critical thinking, analysis, reasoning, interpretation, decision-making, information literacy, and information and communication technology, and skills in professional and confident self-presentation.

This unit is assessed by a Pearson-set assignment. The project brief will be set by the centre, based on a theme provided by Pearson (this will change annually). The theme and chosen project within the theme will enable students to explore and examine a relevant and current topical aspect of professional engineering.

***Please refer to the accompanying Pearson-set Assignment Guide and the Theme Release document for further support and guidance on the delivery of the Pearson-set unit.**

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Formulate and plan a project that will provide a solution to an identified engineering problem.
2. Conduct planned project activities to generate outcomes which provide a solution to the identified engineering problem.
3. Produce a project report analysing the outcomes of each of the project processes and stages.
4. Present the project report drawing conclusions on the outcomes of the project.

Essential Content

LO1 **Formulate and plan a project that will provide a solution to an identified engineering problem**

Examples of realistic engineering based problems:

Crucial considerations for the project

How to identify the nature of the problem through vigorous research

Feasibility study to identify constraints and produce an outline specification

Develop an outline project brief and design specification:

Knowledge theories, calculations and other relevant information that can support the development of a potential solution

Ethical frameworks:

The Engineering Council and Royal Academy of Engineering's Statement of Ethical Principles

The National Society for Professional Engineers' Code of Ethics

Regulatory bodies:

Global, European and national influences on engineering and the role of the engineer, in particular: The Royal Academy of Engineering and the UK Engineering Council

The role and responsibilities of the UK Engineering Council and the Professional Engineering Institutions (PEIs)

The content of the UK Standard for Professional Engineering Competence (UKSPEC)

Chartered Engineer, Incorporated Engineer and Engineering Technician

International regulatory regimes and agreements associated with professional engineering:

European Federation of International Engineering Institutions.

European Engineer (Eur Eng)

European Network for Accreditation of Engineering Education

European Society for Engineering Education

Washington Accord

Dublin Accord

Sydney Accord

International Engineers Alliance

Asia Pacific Economic Cooperation (APEC) Engineers Agreement

L02 Conduct planned project activities to generate outcomes which provide a solution to the identified engineering problem

Project execution phase:

Continually monitoring development against the agreed project plan and adapt the project plan where appropriate

Work plan and time management, using Gantt chart or similar.

Tracking costs and timescales

Maintaining a project diary to monitor progress against milestones and timescales

Engineering professional behaviour sources:

Professional responsibility for health and safety (UK-SPEC)

Professional standards of behaviour (UK-SPEC)

Ethical frameworks:

The Engineering Council and Royal Academy of Engineering's Statement of Ethical Principles

The National Society for Professional Engineers' Code of Ethics

L03 Produce a project report analysing the outcomes of each of the project processes and stages

Convincing arguments:

All findings/outcomes should be convincing and presented logically where the assumption is that the audience has little or no knowledge of the project process

Critical analysis and evaluation techniques:

Most appropriate evaluation techniques to achieve a potential solution

Secondary and primary data should be critiqued and considered with an objective mindset

Objectivity results in more robust evaluations where an analysis justifies a judgement

L04 Present the project report drawing conclusions on the outcomes of the project

Presentation considerations:

Media selection, what to include in the presentation and what outcomes to expect from it. Audience expectations and contributions

Presentation specifics. Who to invite: project supervisors, fellow students and employers. Time allocation, structure of presentation

Reflection on project outcomes and audience reactions

Conclusion to report, recommendations for future work, lessons learned, changes to own work patterns

Reflection for learning and practice:

The difference between reflecting on performance and evaluating a project – the former considers the research process, information gathering and data collection, the latter the quality of the research argument and use of evidence

The cycle of reflection:

To include reflection in action and reflection on action

How to use reflection to inform future behaviour, particularly directed towards sustainable performance

The importance of Continuing Professional Development (CPD) in refining on-going professional practice

Reflective writing:

Avoiding generalisation and focusing on personal development and the research journey in a critical and objective way

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Formulate and plan a project that will provide a solution to an identified engineering problem			D1 Illustrate the effect of legislation and ethics in developing the project plan
P1 Select an appropriate engineering based project, giving reasons for the selection	P2 Create a project plan for the engineering project	M1 Undertake a feasibility study to justify project selection	
L02 Conduct planned project activities to generate outcomes which provide a solution to the identified engineering problem			D2 Critically evaluate the success of the project plan making recommendations for improvements
P3 Conduct project activities, recording progress against original project plan		M2 Explore alternative methods to monitor and meet project milestones, justify selection of chosen method(s)	
L03 Produce a project report analysing the outcomes of each of the project processes and stages			L03 & L04 D3 Critically analyse the project outcomes making recommendations for further development
P4 Produce a project report covering each stage of the project and analysing project outcomes		M3 Use appropriate critical analysis and evaluation techniques to analyse project findings	
L04 Present the project report drawing conclusions on the outcomes of the project			
P5 Present the project report using appropriate media to an audience		M4 Analyse own behaviours and performance during the project and suggest areas for improvement	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

PUGH, P. S. (1990) *Total Design: Integrated Methods for Successful Product Engineering*. Prentice Hall.

STRIEBIG, B., OGUNDIPE, A. and PAPADAKIS, M. (2015) *Engineering Applications in Sustainable Design and Development*. Cengage Learning.

ULRICH, K. and EPPINGER, S. (2011) *Product Design and Development*. 5th Ed. McGraw-Hill Higher Education.

Journals

Journal of Engineering Design.

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 34: Research Project

Unit 35: Professional Engineering Management

Unit 5: Renewable Energy

Unit code F/615/1479

Unit level 4

Credit value 15

Introduction

With the increasing concerns regarding climate change arising from increasing carbon dioxide levels and other adverse environmental impacts of industrial processes, there are widespread economic, ethical, legislative and social pressures on engineers to develop technologies and processes that have reduced carbon and environmental impact.

The aim of this unit is to introduce students to renewable energy resources and technologies, including current storage and generation technologies, and explore their advantages and limitations.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to determine the optimum combination of renewable energy technologies and evaluate their efficiencies, describe how to conduct a cost-benefit analysis to determine the most viable option between renewable and conventional energy sources, and consider the relevant political, socio-economic and legal factors that influence the selection of appropriate energy technologies.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore potential renewable energy resources, including current storage and generation technologies.
2. Determine the optimum combination and efficiencies of renewable energy technologies for a particular location.
3. Conduct a cost-benefit analysis to determine the most viable option between renewable and conventional energy sources.
4. Explain socio-economic, legislative and environmental factors involved in the consideration and selection of other approaches to renewable energy resources and technologies.

Essential Content

L01 **Explore potential renewable energy resources, including current storage and generation technologies**

Alternative energy sources, their respective merits and drawbacks:

Wind energy, ocean and tidal energy, biomass, geothermal energy, hydropower, solar and thermal energy

Waste as energy

L02 **Determine the optimum combination and efficiencies of renewable energy technologies for a particular location**

Energy demand and security of supply:

Energy consumption changes, intensity and trends (domestic, industrial, transport, services sectors)

Factors affecting changes in energy consumption and demand

Future demand planning based on trends and needs analysis

Risk analysis for energy supplies for UK and local areas

Energy capacity margins analysis related to changes in demand

Alternatives for locally used energy sources

Energy reduction and efficiency approaches:

Energy systems available for a given location

Energy legislation and standards

Energy saving and reduction schemes, energy saving technologies available

Energy efficiency approaches for domestic energy use

Grants and government schemes, and the effects of such schemes on supply and demand

L03 **Conduct a cost-benefit analysis to determine the most viable option between renewable and conventional energy sources**

Financial and environmental implications:

Cost-benefit analysis

Socio-economic factors

Financial implications of renewable and conventional energy

L04 Explain socio-economic, legislative and environmental factors involved in the consideration and selection of other approaches to renewable energy resources and technologies

Environmental factors of the set-up and operation of renewable technologies:

Legislative and commercial considerations, including carbon taxes and national and international climate change legislation

Evaluation planning tools such as PESTLE analysis

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Explore potential renewable energy resources, including current storage and generation technologies		M1 Explore the rates of adoption of the most widely used renewable energy resources	D1 Provide supported and well justified recommendations for the adoption of the most widely used conventional and non-conventional renewable energy resources
P1 Create schematic diagrams showing the working principle of the most widely used renewable energy systems			
L02 Determine the optimum combination and efficiencies of renewable energy technologies for a particular location		M2 Discuss how renewable energy systems will bring benefit to the people living in the chosen area	D2 Summarise the efficiencies of a variety of combinations of renewable energy technologies for a chosen location
P2 Describe how each renewable energy system could be connected with local energy systems			
L03 Conduct a cost-benefit analysis to determine the most viable option between renewable and conventional energy sources		M3 Contrast the installation and construction costs of all available renewable energy sources	D3 Conduct a cost-benefit critical analysis to determine the most viable option between all available renewable and conventional energy sources
P3 Calculate the installation and construction costs of one renewable energy system from a renewable energy standpoint			
L04 Explain socio-economic, legislative and environmental factors involved in the consideration and selection of other approaches to renewable energy resources and technologies		M4 Evaluate environmental analysis and planning tools such as PESTLE to identify possible sources of conflicts of interest	D4 Provide supported and justified recommendations and original ideas for an effective environmental analysis of alternative approaches to the selection of renewable energy resources
P4 Examine how socio-economic, legislative and environmental factors affect the selection, set-up and operation of renewable energy sources			

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

ANDREWS, J. and JELLEY, N. (2013) *Energy Science: Principles, Technologies and Impacts*. 2nd Ed. Oxford University Press.

BOTKIN, D. (2010) *Powering the Future*. Pearson.

BOYLE, G. and Open University (2008) *Renewable Energy*. 3rd Ed. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

EVERETT, B., BOYLE, G. and PEAKE, S. (2011) *Energy systems and sustainability: Power for a Sustainable Future*. 2nd Ed. Oxford University Press.

TESTER, J. (2005) *Sustainable Energy: Choosing Among Options*. London: MIT Press.

Journals

Renewable Energy Focus Journal.

The Open Renewable Energy Journal.

Journal of Renewable and Sustainable Energy.

Renewable Energy: An International Journal.

Websites

https://www.theguardian.com	The Guardian Renewable energy (Articles)
http://www.energysavingtrust.org.uk/	Energy Saving Trust Renewable energy (General Reference)
http://www.gov.uk/	Gov.UK Department of Energy & Climate Change (General Reference)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 4: Managing a Professional Engineering Project

Unit 44: Industrial Power, Electronics and Storage

Unit 51: Sustainability

Unit 6: Mechatronics

Unit code T/615/1480

Unit level 4

Credit value 15

Introduction

Auto-focus cameras, car cruise control and automated airport baggage handling systems are examples of mechatronic systems. Mechatronics is the combination of mechanical, electrical and computer/controlled engineering working together in automated systems and 'smart' product design.

Among the topics included in this unit are: consideration of component compatibility, constraints on size and cost, control devices used, British and/or European standards relevant to application, sensor types and interfacing, simulation and modelling software functions, system function and operation, advantages and disadvantages of software simulation, component data sheets, systems drawings, flowcharts, wiring and schematic diagrams.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain the basic mechatronic system components and functions, design a simple mechatronic system specification for a given application, use appropriate simulation and modelling software to examine its operation and function, and solve faults on mechatronic systems using a range of techniques and methods.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explain the design and operational characteristics of a mechatronic system.
2. Design a mechatronic system specification for a given application.
3. Examine the operation and function of a mechatronics system using simulation and modelling software.
4. Identify and correct faults in a mechatronic system.

Essential Content

L01 **Examine the design and operational characteristics of a mechatronic system**

Origins and evolution:

History and early development, evolution

Practical examples and extent of use

Current operational abilities and anticipated improvements

Systems characteristics:

Design of systems in an integrated way

Sensor and transducer types used

Consideration of component compatibility

Constraints on size and cost

Control device requirements and examples of applications

L02 **Design a mechatronic system specification for a given application**

Systems specifications:

British and/or European standards relevant to application

Sensor types and interfacing

Actuator technology availability and selection

Selection and use of appropriate control software/devices.

Consideration of the interaction of system variables

System commissioning parameters

L03 **Examine the operation and function of a mechatronics system using simulation and modelling software**

Operation and functions:

Simulation and modelling software functions

System function and operation

Modes of operation simulation, loading and surges

Advantages and disadvantage of software simulation

L04 Identify and correct faults in a mechatronic system

Locating and correcting system faults:

Component data sheets, systems drawings, flowcharts, wiring and schematic diagrams

Original system correct function and operation

Inspection and testing using methodical fault location techniques and methods, use of control software to aid fault location

Identification, evaluation and verification of faults and their causes, rectification, final system testing and return to service

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Examine the design and operational characteristics of a mechatronic system			D1 Investigate an actual mechatronics system specification to propose alternative solutions
P1 Describe the key components of a given mechatronics system	P2 Identify the types of actuators, sensors and transducers used in the mechatronics system	M1 Explore how the mechatronics components operate as part of an integrated system M2 Investigate the methods of control used by mechatronics systems	
L02 Design a mechatronic system specification for a given application			D2 Evaluate the operational capabilities and limitations of the mechatronics system design specification produced
P3 Select the relevant sensor and the appropriate actuator technologies and produce a design specification suitable for these selections		M3 Justify the sensor and actuator technologies selected with reference to available alternatives	
L03 Examine the operation and function of a mechatronics system using simulation and modelling software			D3 Explain the function and operation of a simulated mechatronics system
P4 Demonstrate industry standard mechatronics simulation/modelling software		M4 Describe the advantages and disadvantages of the software simulation	
L04 Identify and correct faults in a mechatronic system			D4 Investigate the causes of faults on a mechatronics system and suggest alternatives to the design specification to improve reliability
P5 Explain the safe use of fault finding test equipment	P6 Locate and rectify faults on a mechatronic system	M5 Apply and document the correct use of fault finding techniques/methods	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

BOLTON, W. (2015) *Mechatronics: Electronic Control Systems in Mechanical and Electrical Engineering*. 5th Ed. Essex: Pearson Education Limited.

MAHALIK, N.P. (2010) *Mechatronics: Principles, Concepts and Applications*. New Delhi: McGraw-Hill.

ONWUBOLU, G.C. (2005) *Mechatronics: Principles and Applications*. Oxford: Elsevier.

RAMACHANDRAN, K.P., VIJAYARAGHAVAN, G.K. and BALASUNDARAM, M.S. (2008) *Mechatronics: Integrated Mechanical Electronic Systems*. India: Wiley.

Journals

International Journal of Advanced Mechatronic Systems.

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 15: Automation, Robotics and Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs)

Unit 54: Further Control Systems Engineering

Unit 7: Machining and Processing of Engineering Materials

Unit code	A/615/1481
Unit level	4
Credit value	15

Introduction

Practical articles that we see and use every day such as automobiles, aircraft, trains, and even the cans we use to store our food, came from the ideas and visions of engineers and designers. The production of these articles is based on well-established production processes, machines and materials.

The aim of this unit is to introduce students to the application of a variety of material forming processes involved in the production of components and articles for everyday use. Among the topics included in this unit are: conventional machining, shaping and moulding processes used in the production of components, machine tooling, jigs and fixtures required to support the manufacture of components, using metallic and non-metallic materials such as polymers and composites.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to describe moulding, shaping and forging manufacturing processes, explain the importance of material selection, and summarise the impact machining processes have on the physical properties of a component.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore the conventional machining and forming processes and their application in the production of engineered components.
2. Explain how component materials, metals and non-metals, affect the selection of the most appropriate machining or forming process.
3. Identify the most appropriate machine tooling, jigs and fixtures to support the production of an engineered component.
4. Identify the most appropriate moulding and shaping process used to produce a range of metal and non-metal engineered components.

Essential Content

L01 Explore the conventional machining and forming processes and their application in the production of engineered components

Conventional processes:

Material removal machining processes including: conventional manual processes, CNC machining and erosion machining technologies

Selection of machining processes to generate geometrical forms: flat and cylindrical geometry

Impact of material removal rate on surface finish and texture and speed of production

Consideration of the effect of production volume (prototypes, batch, and high volume) on the selection of the most appropriate process, tooling and resource commitment

Safe working practices when operating machining and process forming equipment

L02 Explain how component materials, metals and non-metals, affect the selection of the most appropriate machining or forming process

Material choice and machine process:

Impact of material types on the choice of machining process including: round, square and hexagonal bar, tube, plate, section and pre-cast

Machining characteristics when using polymers, composites, non-ferrous and ferrous metals and exotic materials

How the mechanical properties of the component material can be affected by the machining process

Effect of lubricants, coolants and cutting fluids on tooling, production speed, and quality of finish

L03 Identify the most appropriate machine tooling, jigs and fixtures to support the production of an engineered component

Awareness of the range of cutting tools:

Factors that prolong tool life, increased material removal rate and improved surface finish

Properties for cutting tool materials

Cause and effect of premature and catastrophic tool failure, preventative measures to promote tool life

Cutting forces and the mechanics of chip formation:

Factors that affect cutting speeds and feeds, calculating cutting speeds and feeds

Relationship between cutting speed and tool life, economics of metal removal

Range of tooling jigs and fixtures including mechanical, magnetic, hydraulic and pneumatic

Work-holding: six degrees of freedom

L04 Identify the most appropriate moulding and shaping process used to produce a range of metal and non-metal engineered components

Moulding and shaping processes:

Range of metal and ceramic powder moulding and shaping processes

Casting, powder metallurgy and sintering

Range of plastic moulding and shaping processes: blow, compression, extrusion, injection, laminating, reaction injection, matrix, rotational, spin casting, transfer and vacuum forming

Range, benefits and limitations of various shaping processes:

Extrusion, forging, rolling, hot and cold presswork

Range of casting processes:

Sand, permanent mould, investment, lost foam, die, centrifugal, glass and slip casting

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
LO1 Explore the conventional machining and forming processes and their application in the production of engineered components			D1 Determine the benefits and limitations of components manufactured using conventional machining and moulding processes
P1 Describe the most appropriate machining process to manufacture a selected product	P2 Explain why a specific machining process would be used to manufacture a selected component	M1 Examine the characteristics of conventional machining processes, plastic moulding processes and powder metallurgy	
LO2 Explain how component materials, metals and non-metals, affect the selection of the most appropriate machining or forming process			D2 Review the structure and mechanical properties of a given engineered aluminium alloy component, manufactured using the die casting process and conventional material removal machining processes
P3 Describe how the manufacturing process can affect the structure and properties of the parent material	P4 Describe the effect lubricants, coolants and cutting fluids have on tooling, production speed, and quality of finish	M2 Detail the characteristics of cutting tool geometries M3 Explain why different tool geometries are required for polymer, composite and carbon steel materials	
LO3 Identify the most appropriate machine tooling, jigs and fixtures to support the production of an engineered component			D3 Examine the relationship between cutting speed and tool life on the economics of metal removal
P5 Review the parameters that determine the appropriate tooling for the production of a given engineered component	P6 Describe the six modes of cutting tool failure	M4 Explain the properties and applications of ceramics tools and cubic boron nitride tools	

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Identify the most appropriate moulding and shaping process used to produce a range of metal and non-metal engineered components		D4 Investigate how the composition and structure of metal alloys, polymers and polymer matrix composites are affected by the material machining or forming process
P7 Explain which material characteristics determine the choice of plastic moulding process P8 Describe the benefits and limitations of products manufactured by the sintering process	M5 Explain each of the stages of the ceramic powder moulding process and comment on the benefits associated with this manufacturing process	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

KALPAKJIAN, S. and SCHMID, R.S. (2013) *Manufacturing Engineering and Technology*. 7th Ed. Pearson.

TIMINGS, R.L. (2004) *Basic Manufacturing*. 3rd Ed. Oxford: Newnes.

Journals

Journal of Materials: Design and Applications.

Websites

<http://www.machinery.co.uk/>

Machinery
(General Reference)

<http://www.materialsforengineering.co.uk/>

Engineering Materials
Online Magazine
(E-Magazine)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 9: Materials, Properties and Testing

Unit 10: Mechanical Workshop Practices

Unit 8: Mechanical Principles

Unit code F/615/1482

Unit level 4

Credit value 15

Introduction

Mechanical principles have been crucial for engineers to convert the energy produced by burning oil and gas into systems to propel, steer and stop our automobiles, aircraft and ships, amongst thousands of other applications. The knowledge and application of these mechanical principles is still the essential underpinning science of all machines in use today or being developed into the latest technology.

The aim of this unit is to introduce students to the essential mechanical principles associated with engineering applications.

Topics included in this unit are: behavioural characteristics of static, dynamic and oscillating engineering systems including shear forces, bending moments, torsion, linear and angular acceleration, conservation of energy and vibrating systems; and the movement and transfer of energy by considering parameters of mechanical power transmission systems.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain the underlying principles, requirements and limitations of mechanical systems

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Identify solutions to problems within static mechanical systems.
2. Illustrate the effects that constraints have on the performance of a dynamic mechanical system.
3. Investigate elements of simple mechanical power transmission systems.
4. Analyse natural and damped vibrations within translational and rotational mass-spring systems.

Essential Content

L01 Identify solutions to problems within static mechanical systems

Shafts and beams:

The effect of shear forces on beams

Bending moments and stress due to bending in beams

Selection of appropriate beams and columns to satisfy given specifications

The theory of torsion in solid and hollow circular shafts

L02 Illustrate the effects that constraints have on the performance of a dynamic mechanical system

Energy and work:

The principle of conservation of energy and work-energy transfer in systems

Linear and angular velocity and acceleration

Velocity and acceleration diagrams of planar mechanisms

Gyroscopic motion

L03 Investigate elements of simple mechanical power transmission systems

Simple systems:

Parameters of simple and compounded geared systems

Efficiency of lead screws and screw jacks

Couplings and energy storage:

Universal couplings and conditions for constant-velocity

Importance of energy storage elements and their applications

L04 Analyse natural and damped vibrations within translational and rotational mass-spring systems

Types of motion:

Simple harmonic motion

Natural frequency of vibration in mass-spring systems

Damped systems:

Frequency of damped vibrations in mass-spring-damper systems

The conditions for an external force to produce resonance

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Identify solutions to problems within static mechanical systems			D1 Calculate the magnitude of shear force and bending moment in cantilever and encastré beams for a variety of applications
P1 Calculate the distribution of shear force, bending moment and stress due to bending in simply supported beams P2 Justify the selection of standard rolled steel sections for beams and columns P3 Determine the distribution of shear stress and the angular deflection due to torsion in solid and hollow circular shafts	M1 Determine the material of a circular bar from experimental data of angle of twist obtained from a torsion test		
L02 Illustrate the effects that constraints have on the performance of a dynamic mechanical system			D2 Calculate solutions of velocities and accelerations within planar mechanisms using trigonometric methodology
P4 Explain the effects of energy transfer in mechanical systems with uniform acceleration present P5 Identify the magnitude and effect of gyroscopic reaction torque	M2 Construct diagrams of the vector solutions of velocities and accelerations within planar mechanisms		
L03 Investigate elements of simple mechanical power transmission systems			D3 Examine the cause of a documented case of mechanical power transmission failure and the steps taken to correct the problem and rectify any design faults
P6 Determine the velocity ratio for compound gear systems and the holding torque required to securely mount a gearbox P7 Calculate the operating efficiency of lead screws and screw jacks P8 Explain the conditions required for a constant velocity ratio between two joined shafts	M3 Examine devices which function to store mechanical energy in their operation		

Pass	Merit	Distinction
LO4 Analyse natural and damped vibrations within translational and rotational mass-spring systems		D4 Identify the conditions needed for mechanical resonance and measures that are taken to prevent this from occurring
P9 Explain the natural frequency of vibration in a mass-spring system	M4 Determine the amplitude and phase angle of the transient response within a mass-spring-damper system	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

BIRD, J. and ROSS, C. (2014) *Mechanical Engineering Principles*. 3rd Ed. London: Routledge.

TOOLEY, M. and DINGLE, L. (2012) *Engineering Science: For Foundation Degree and Higher National*. London: Routledge.

Websites

<https://www.khanacademy.org/> Khan Academy
(Tutorials)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: Engineering Design

Unit 2: Engineering Maths

Unit 36: Advanced Mechanical Principles

Unit 9: Materials, Properties and Testing

Unit code J/615/1483

Unit level 4

Credit value 15

Introduction

The world we live in would be a very different place without the sophisticated engineering materials currently available. Many of the things we take for granted, such as telecommunications, air travel, safe and low-cost energy, or modern homes, rely on advanced materials development for their very existence. Successful engineering application and innovation is dependent upon the appropriate use of these materials, and the understanding of their properties.

This unit introduces students to the atomic structure of materials and the way it affects the properties, physical nature and performance characteristics of common manufacturing materials; how these properties are tested, and modified by various processing treatments; and problems that occur which can cause materials to fail in service.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain the relationship between the atomic structure and the physical properties of materials, determine the suitability of engineering materials for use in a specified role, explore the testing techniques to determine the physical properties of an engineering material and identify the causes of in-service material failure.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explain the relationship between the atomic structure and the physical properties of materials.
2. Determine the suitability of engineering materials for use in a specified role.
3. Explore the testing techniques to determine the physical properties of an engineering material.
4. Recognise and categorise the causes of in-service material failure.

Essential Content

L01 **Explain the relationship between the atomic structure and the physical properties of materials**

Physical properties of materials:

Classification and terminology of engineering materials

Material categories: metallic, ceramic, polymer and composites

Atomic structure, electrostatic covalent and ionic bonding

Crystalline structures: body-centred and face-centred cubic lattice and hexagonal close packed

Characteristics and function of ferrous, non-ferrous phase diagrams, amorphous and crystalline polymer structures

L02 **Determine the suitability of engineering materials for use in a specified role**

Materials used in specific roles:

The relationship between product design and material selection

Categorising materials by their physical, mechanical, electrical and thermal properties

The effect heat treatment and mechanical processes have on material properties

How environmental factors can affect material behaviour of metallic, ceramic, polymer and composite materials

Consideration of the impact that forms of supply and cost have on material selection

L03 **Explore the testing techniques to determine the physical properties of an engineering material**

Testing techniques:

Destructive and non-destructive tests used to identify material properties

The influence of test results on material selection for a given application

Most appropriate tests for the different categories of materials

Undertaking mechanical tests on each of the four material categories for data comparison and compare results against industry recognised data sources, explain reasons for any deviation found

L04 Recognise and categorise the causes of in-service material failure

Material failure:

Reasons why engineered components fail in service

Working and environmental conditions that lead to material failure

Common mechanisms of failure for metals, polymers, ceramics and composites

Reasons for failure in service

Preventative measures that can be used to extend service life

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
LO1 Explain the relationship between the atomic structure and the physical properties of materials			D1 Explain how composition and structure of materials influence the properties of the parent material across the material's range
P1 Describe the crystalline structure of the body-centred cubic cell, face-centred cubic cell and hexagonal close packed cell	P2 Identify the different material properties that are associated with amorphous and crystalline polymer structures	M1 Describe physical, mechanical, electrical and thermal material properties, identifying practical applications for each property if it were to be used in an engineering context	
LO2 Determine the suitability of engineering materials for use in a specified role			D2 Explain why the behaviour of materials is considered such an important factor when selecting a material for a given product or application
P3 Provide a list of the four materials categories, including an example of a product and application for each material identified	P4 Identify the specific characteristics related to the behaviour of the four categories of engineering materials	M2 Describe, with examples, the effect heat treatment and mechanical processes have on material properties	
LO3 Explore the testing techniques to determine the physical properties of an engineering material			D3 Analyse the results of mechanical tests on each of the four material categories for data comparison and compare results against industry recognised data sources, explaining any differences found
P5 Describe the six most common tests used to identify material properties	P6 Describe the non-destructive testing processes – dye penetrant, magnetic particle, ultrasonic and radiography – and include an example application for each	M3 Explain how test results influence material selection for a given application	

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Recognise and categorise the causes of in-service material failure		D4 Explain the methods that could be used for estimating product service life when a product is subject to creep and fatigue loading
P7 Describe six common mechanisms of failure P8 Describe working and environmental conditions that lead to failure for a product made from material from each of the four material categories	M4 Explain, with examples, the preventative measures that can be used to extend the service life of a given product within its working environment	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

ASHBY, M. (2005) *Materials Selection in Mechanical Design*. 3rd Ed. Elsevier.

CALLISTER, W. and RETHWISCH, D. (2009) *Fundamentals of Materials Science and Engineering: An Integrated Approach*. 4th Ed. Wiley.

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: Engineering Design

Unit 10: Mechanical Workshop Practices

Unit 10: Mechanical Workshop Practices

Unit code L/615/1484

Unit level 4

Credit value 15

Introduction

The complex and sophisticated engineering manufacturing processes used to mass produce the products we see and use daily has its roots in the hand-operated lathes and milling machines still used in small engineering companies. To appreciate the fundamentals underpinning complex manufacturing processes, it is essential that engineers are able to read engineering drawings and produce simple components accurately and efficiently.

This unit introduces students to the effective use of textual, numeric and graphical information, how best to extract and interpret information from engineering drawings, and the practices of workshop-based turning and milling machining.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to identify the mechanical measurement and quality control processes to analyse the dimensional accuracy of a machined component; operate machining equipment to produce a range of components to specification; explain the importance of material selection when choosing the most appropriate machining process; and apply safe working practices throughout.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Identify the potential hazards that exist when operating machine tools and bench fitting equipment, with reference to the appropriate health and safety regulations and risk assessment criteria.
2. Operate a manual lathe and milling machine to produce dimensionally accurate engineering components.
3. Interpret information from engineering drawings and operate measuring tools and work-holding equipment to check dimensional accuracy of machined components.
4. Explain mechanical measurement and quality control processes.

Essential Content

- L01 Identify the potential hazards that exist when operating machine tools and bench fitting equipment, with reference to the appropriate health and safety regulations and risk assessment criteria**

Safety compliance:

Importance of, and responsibility for, safe working practice

Safe working practices when operating machining equipment in the mechanical machine workshop

Workshop safety legislation and regulations, and how they are met in practice

Risk assessment of bench fitting and machining activities

- L02 Operate a manual lathe and milling machine to produce dimensionally accurate engineering components**

Operation:

Factors influencing machining operations

Set-up and use of a manual lathe and milling machine following all safety procedures

Most appropriate cutting tools, work and tool holding methods for multiple applications

Speeds and feeds to suit material properties and application

Use of work-holding jigs and fixtures

Removing material within dimensional tolerances

- L03 Interpret information from engineering drawings and operate measuring tools and work-holding equipment to check dimensional accuracy of machined components**

Drawings function:

Types of engineering drawing and their use

Developing proficiency in reading and extracting information from mechanical engineering drawings

Types of measuring tools

Characteristics of measurement tools for inspecting parts

Preparing quality control and inspection reports

L04 Explain the types and use of mechanical measurement and quality control processes

Control processes:

Types of production quality control processes, metrology techniques

Importance of quality checks on machined components

Function of quality control metrology equipment, including CNC controlled coordinate measuring machines, mobile measuring arms and touch probes, contact scanning probes and non-contact sensors (optical)

Importance of the process for data collection, analysis and product improvement

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Identify the potential hazards that exist when operating machine tools and bench fitting equipment with reference to the appropriate health and safety regulations and risk assessment criteria		M1 Produce a risk assessment, identifying suitable control measures, prior to undertaking a machining activity	D1 Interpret the key features of relevant health and safety regulations as applied to a machining workshop
P1 Identify the potential hazards that exist when operating machine tools and bench fitting equipment	P2 Describe the safe working practices and procedures to be followed when preparing and using a manual lathe and milling machine		
L02 Operate a manual lathe and milling machine to produce dimensionally accurate engineering components		M2 Calculate appropriate cutting speeds and feeds to suit material properties and application for a given component	D2 Illustrate the operating parameters of the milling machine and lathe and describe the function and features of cutting tools, work and tool-holding devices
P3 Produce a dimensionally accurate component using a lathe and milling machine			
L03 Interpret information from engineering drawings and operate measuring tools and work-holding equipment to check dimensional accuracy of machined components		M3 Explain the process of using a dial gauge indicator to set-up work-holding devices on a milling machine	D3 Examine, with reference to material properties and geometry, the criteria for selection of the appropriate tooling for machining components from engineering materials including aluminium alloy, stainless steel and titanium alloy
P4 Identify the information that is required from a drawing to plan, machine and check the accuracy of a complex engineering component	P5 Describe the function of precision measuring equipment used to check the dimensional accuracy of machined components		

Pass	Merit	Distinction
LO4 Explain the types and use of mechanical measurement and quality control processes		D4 Illustrate why the process of machining data collection and analysis is of critical importance to a production engineering company
P6 Explain the purpose of an engineering metrology laboratory and list the equipment found in a typical such lab	M4 Determine the function of the metrology equipment, surface testing, profile projectors, video measuring, interferometer, SIP measuring equipment, coordinate measuring machines (CMM) and 3D scanners	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

- BADADHE, A.M. (2006) *Metrology and Quality Control*. Tathawade: Technical Publications.
- BLACK, B.J. (2015) *Workshop Processes, Practices and Materials*. Routledge.
- JOHN, K.C. (2010) *Mechanical Workshop Practice*. 2nd Ed. Prentice-Hall.
- NUBUO, S. (2007) *Metrology Handbook: The Science of Measurement*. 5th Ed. Mitutoyo (UK) Ltd.
- RAGHAVENDRA, N.V. and KRISHNAMURTHY, L. (2013) *Engineering Metrology and Measurements*. Oxford University Press.

Journals

- International Journal of Metrology and Quality Engineering.*
- Metrology Journal.*

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 9: Materials, Properties and Testing

Unit 14: Production Engineering for Manufacture

Unit 11: Fluid Mechanics

Unit code R/615/1485

Unit level 4

Credit value 15

Introduction

Fluid mechanics is an important subject to engineers of many disciplines, not just those working directly with fluid systems. Mechanical engineers need to understand the principles of hydraulic devices and turbines (wind and water); aeronautical engineers use these concepts to understand flight, while civil engineers concentrate on water supply, sewerage and irrigation.

This unit introduces students to the fluid mechanics techniques used in mechanical engineering. The hydraulic devices and systems that incorporate the transmission of hydraulic pressure and forces exerted by a static fluid on immersed surfaces.

Topics included in this unit are: pressure and force, submerged surfaces, fluid flow theory, aerodynamics, and hydraulic machinery.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to work with the concept and measurement of viscosity in fluids, and the characteristics of Newtonian and non-Newtonian fluids; examine fluid flow phenomena, including energy conservation, estimation of head loss in pipes and viscous drag; and examine the operational characteristics of hydraulic machines, in particular the operating principles of various water turbines and pumps.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Determine the behavioural characteristics of static fluid systems.
2. Examine the operating principles and limitations of viscosity measuring devices.
3. Investigate dynamic fluid parameters of real fluid flow.
4. Explore dynamic fluid parameters of real fluid flow.

Essential Content

L01 Determine the behavioural characteristics of static fluid systems

Pressure and force:

How Pascal's laws define hydrostatic pressure
Pressure with the use of manometers
Transmission of force in hydraulic devices

Submerged surfaces:

Determining thrust on immersed surfaces
Moments of area and parallel axis theorem
Calculating centre of pressure with moments of area

L02 Examine the operating principles and limitations of viscosity measuring devices

Viscosity in fluids:

Dynamic and kinematic viscosity definitions
Characteristics of Newtonian fluids
Temperature effects on viscosity
Classification of non-Newtonian fluids

Operating principles and limitations:

Operating principles of viscometers
Converting results acquired from viscometers into viscosity values

L03 Investigate dynamic fluid parameters of real fluid flow

Fluid flow theory:

Energy present within a flowing fluid and the formulation of Bernoulli's Equation
Classification of fluid flow using Reynolds numbers
Calculations of flow within pipelines
Head losses that occur within a fluid flowing in a pipeline
Viscous drag resulting from fluid flow and the formulation of the drag equation

Aerodynamics:

Application of prior theory of fluid flow to aerodynamics

Principles of aerofoils and how drag induces lift

Flow measuring devices and their operating principles

L04 Explore the operating principles and efficiencies of hydraulic machines

Hydraulic machinery:

Operating principles of different types of water turbine

Reciprocating and centrifugal pump theory

Efficiencies of these different types of hydraulic machinery

Environmental concerns surrounding hydraulic machines

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Determine behavioural characteristics of static fluid systems		M1 Determine the parameters of hydraulic devices that are used in the transmission of force	D1 Explain the use and limitations of manometers to measure pressure
P1 Describe force and centre of pressure on submerged surfaces	P2 Carry out appropriate calculations on force and centre of pressure on submerged surfaces		
L02 Examine the operating principles and limitations of viscosity measuring devices		M2 Explain, with examples, the effects of temperature and shear forces on Newtonian and non-Newtonian fluids.	D2 Illustrate the results of a viscosity test on a Newtonian fluid at various temperatures with that which is given on a data sheet and explain discrepancies.
P3 Explain the operation and constraints of different viscometers that quantify viscosity in fluids	P4 Carry out appropriate calculations on the effect of changes in temperature and other constraints on the viscosity of a fluid		
L03 Investigate dynamic fluid parameters of real fluid flow		M3 Explain the effect of aerodynamic drag and lift on aerofoils.	D3 Determine the head losses accumulated by a fluid when flowing in a pipeline for various applications.
P5 Determine parameters of a flowing fluid using Bernoulli's Equation.	P6 Define the flow of a fluid using Reynold's numbers and the significance of this information.		
L04 Explore the operating principles and efficiencies of hydraulic machines		M4 Identify the limitations that exist within different types of water turbine.	D4 Describe and analyse the arguments concerning the ecological impact of hydroelectric power.
P7 Determine the efficiency of a water turbine.	P8 Calculate the input power requirements of centrifugal pumps.		

Recommended Resources

Textbook

MASSEY, B.S. and WARD-SMITH, J. (2011) *Mechanics of Fluids*. 9th Ed. Oxford: Spon Press.

Journals

Journal of Fluid Mechanics. Cambridge University Press.

Annual Review of Fluid Mechanics. Annual Reviews, California.

Websites

<https://www.khanacademy.org/> Khan Academy
Fluids
(Tutorials)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 29: Electro, Pneumatic and Hydraulic Systems

Unit 64: Thermofluids

Unit 12: Engineering Management

Unit code	Y/615/1486
Unit level	4
Credit value	15

Introduction

Managing engineering projects is one of the most complex tasks in engineering. Consider the mass production of millions of cars, sending a man or woman into space or extracting oil or gas from deep below the surface of the earth. Bringing the materials and skills together in a cost effective, safe and timely way is what engineering management is all about.

This unit introduces students to engineering management principles and practices, and their strategic implementation.

Topics included in this unit are: the main concepts and theories of management and leadership, fundamentals of risk management, operational management, project and operations management theories and tools, the key success measures of management strategies, and planning tools.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to investigate key strategic issues involved in developing and implementing engineering projects and solutions, and explain professional codes of conduct and the relevant legal requirements governing engineering activities.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Examine the application of management techniques, and cultural and leadership aspects to engineering organisations.
2. Explore the role of risk and quality management in improving performance in engineering organisations.
3. Investigate the theories and tools of project and operations management when managing activities and optimising resource allocation.
4. Perform activities that improve current management strategies within an identified element of an engineering organisation.

Essential Content

L01 Examine the application of management techniques, and cultural and leadership aspects to engineering organisations

Main concepts and theories of management and leadership:

Influence on organisational culture and communication practices

Effect of change within an organisation on its culture and behaviour

Management and leadership theories:

Management and leadership theories

Managerial behaviour and effectiveness

Organisational culture and change

Organisational communication practices

L02 Explore the role of risk and quality management in improving performance in engineering organisations

Fundamentals of quality management:

Introduction to monitoring and controlling

Most appropriate quality improvement methodologies and practices for different business areas, projects and processes in order to lower risk and improve processes

Risk and quality management:

Risk management processes

Risk mapping and risk matrix

Quality management theories

Continuous improvement practices

Principles, tools and techniques of Total Quality Management (TQM)

L03 Investigate the theories and tools of project and operations management when managing activities and optimising resource allocation

Operation management:

Main areas and stages of projects and operations management

Most important methodologies focusing on eliminating waste and smoothing the process flows without scarifying quality

Project and operations management theories and tools:

Project appraisal and life cycle

Logistics and supply chain management

Operations management

Resources management

Sustainability

Legal requirements governing employment, health, safety and environment

L04 Perform activities that improve current management strategies within an identified element of an engineering organisation

The key success of management strategies:

Following processes from end to end, from suppliers to customers

Identifying areas critical for the success of a project or process

Planning tools:

Gantt charts

Flow charts

Critical analysis and evaluation

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Examine the application of management techniques, and cultural and leadership aspects to engineering organisations		M1 Justify different management techniques with emphasis on cultural and leadership aspects and their applications to engineering organisations	D1 Propose recommendations for the most efficient application of management techniques
P1 Explain management and leadership theories and techniques used within engineering organisations			
L02 Explore the role of risk and quality management in improving performance in engineering organisations		M2 Explain how risk and quality management strategies encourage performance improvements within engineering organisations	D2 Provide supported and justified recommendations for the most efficient and effective risk and quality management practices
P2 Describe the role and importance of risk and quality management processes and their impact on engineering organisations			
L03 Investigate the theories and tools of project and operations management when managing activities and optimising resource allocation		M3 Analyse the most effective project and operations management tools used when managing activities and optimising resource allocation	D3 Analyse the relative merits of theories and tools of project and operations management, with a focus on their relevance when managing activities and optimising resource allocation
P3 Identify project and operations management tools used when managing activities and resources within the engineering industry			
L04 Perform activities that improve current management strategies within an identified element of an engineering organisation		M4 Explore activities that will improve management strategies within an engineering organisation	D4 Conduct a full analysis of the management processes within an engineering organisation (or case study) and make fully justified recommendations for improvements to the management strategies
P4 Define the range of processes available to improve management processes within an engineering organisation			

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

BOWERSOX, D.J., CLOSS, D. and BIXBY, M. (2012) *Supply Chain Logistics Management*. 4th Ed. McGraw-Hill.

HILL, A. and HILL, T. (2009) *Manufacturing Operations Strategy: Texts and Cases*. 3rd Ed. Palgrave Macmillan.

OAKLAND, J.S. (2015) *Statistical Process Control*. 6th Ed. Routledge.

Websites

http://strategicmanagement.net/	Strategic Management Society (General Reference)
http://www.journals.elsevier.com/	Elsevier Journal of Operations Management (Journal)
http://www.emeraldgrouppublishing.com	Emerald Publishing International Journal of Operations & Production Management (e-Journal)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 4: Managing a Professional Engineering Project

Unit 35: Professional Engineering Management

Unit 13: Fundamentals of Thermodynamics and Heat Engines

Unit code	D/615/1487
Unit level	4
Credit value	15

Introduction

Thermodynamics is one of the most common applications of science in our lives, and it is so much a part of our daily life that it is often taken for granted. For example, when driving your car you know that the fuel you put into the tank is converted into energy to propel the vehicle, and the heat produced by burning gas when cooking will produce steam which can lift the lid of the pan. These are examples of thermodynamics, which is the study of the dynamics and behaviour of energy and its manifestations.

This unit introduces students to the principles and concepts of thermodynamics and its application in modern engineering.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to investigate fundamental thermodynamic systems and their properties, apply the steady flow energy equation to plant equipment, examine the principles of heat transfer to industrial applications, and determine the performance of internal combustion engines.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Investigate fundamental thermodynamic systems and their properties.
2. Apply the Steady Flow Energy Equation to plant equipment.
3. Examine the principles of heat transfer to industrial applications.
4. Determine the performance of internal combustion engines.

Essential Content

L01 Investigate fundamental thermodynamic systems and their properties

Fundamental systems:

Forms of energy and basic definitions

Definitions of systems (open and closed) and surroundings

First law of thermodynamics

The gas laws: Charles' Law, Boyle's Law, general gas law and the Characteristic Gas Equation

The importance and applications of pressure/volume diagrams and the concept of work done

Polytrophic processes: constant pressure, constant volume, adiabatic and isothermal systems

L02 Apply the Steady Flow Energy Equation to plant equipment

Energy equations:

Conventions used when describing the behaviour of heat and work

The Non-Flow Energy Equation as it applies to closed systems

Assumptions, applications and examples of practical systems

Steady Flow Energy Equation as applied to open systems

Assumptions made about the conditions around, energy transfer and the calculations for specific plant equipment e.g. boilers, super-heaters, turbines, pumps and condensers

L03 Examine the principles of heat transfer to industrial applications

Principles of heat transfer:

Modes of heat transmission, including conduction, convection & radiation

Heat transfer through composite walls and use of U and k values

Application of formulae to different types of heat exchangers, including recuperator and evaporative

Regenerators

Heat losses in thick and thin walled pipes, optimum lagging thickness

L04 Determine the performance of internal combustion engines

Performance:

Application of the second law of thermodynamics to heat engines

Comparison of theoretical and practical heat engine cycles, including Otto, Diesel and Carnot

Explanations of practical applications of heat engine cycles, such as compression ignition (CI) and spark ignition engines, including their relative mechanical and thermodynamic efficiencies

Describe possible efficiency improvements to heat engines

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Investigate fundamental thermodynamic systems and their properties			D1 Illustrate the importance of expressions for work done in thermodynamic processes by applying first principles
P1 Describe the operation of thermodynamic systems and their properties P2 Explain the application of the first law of thermodynamics to appropriate systems P3 Explain the relationships between system constants for a perfect gas	M1 Calculate the index of compression in polytrophic processes		
L02 Apply the Steady Flow Energy Equation to plant equipment			D2 Produce specific Steady Flow Energy Equations based on stated assumptions in plant equipment
P4 Explain system parameters using the Non-Flow Energy Equation P5 Apply the Steady Flow Energy Equation to plant equipment	M2 Derive the Steady Flow Energy Equation from first principles		
L03 Examine the principles of heat transfer to industrial applications			D3 Distinguish the differences between parallel and counter flow recuperator heat exchangers
P6 Determine the heat transfer through composite walls P7 Apply heat transfer formulae to heat exchangers	M3 Explore heat losses through lagged and unlagged pipes		

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Determine the performance of internal combustion engines		D4 Evaluate the performance of two stroke and four stroke diesel engines
P8 Describe with the aid of diagrams the operational sequence of four stroke spark ignition and four stroke compression ignition engines P9 Explain the mechanical efficiency of two and four stroke engines	M4 Review the relative efficiency of ideal heat engines operating on the Otto and Diesel cycles	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

DUNN, D. (2001) *Fundamental Engineering Thermodynamics*. Longman.

EASTOP, T.D. and MCCONKEY, A. (1996) *Applied Thermodynamics for Engineering Technologists*. 5th Ed. Prentice Hall.

EASTOP, T.D. and MCCONKEY, A. (1997) *Applied Thermodynamics for Engineering Technologists Student Solution Manual*. 5th Ed. Prentice Hall.

RAYNER, J. (2008) *Basic Engineering Thermodynamics*. 5th Ed. Pearson.

ROGERS, G.F.C. and MAYHEW, Y.R. (1994) *Thermodynamic and Transport Properties of Fluids: S. I. Units*. 5th Ed. Wiley-Blackwell.

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 38: Further Thermodynamics

Unit code	H/615/1488
Unit level	4
Credit value	15

All of the manufactured products we use in our daily lives, from processed food to clothing and cars, are the result of production engineering. Production engineers need to have a comprehensive knowledge and understanding of all the possible production technologies available, their advantages and disadvantages, the requirements of the production system operation and the interaction between the various components of the production system.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to illustrate the role and purpose of production engineering and its relationship with the other elements of a manufacturing system. They will be able to select the most appropriate production processes and associated facility arrangements for manufacturing products of different material types and design a production system incorporating a number of different production processes.

1. Illustrate the role and purpose of production engineering and its relationship with the other elements of a manufacturing system.
2. Select the most appropriate production processes and associated facility arrangements, for manufacturing products of different material types.
3. Analyse how a production system can incorporate a number of different production processes for a given product or assembly.
4. Explore the effectiveness of a production system in terms of its operation within the wider manufacturing system.

Essential Content

L01 Illustrate the role and purpose of production engineering and its relationship with the other elements of a manufacturing system

Production engineering activities:

Common practices for manufacturing

Research and develop tools, processes, machines, and equipment

Integrate facilities and systems for producing quality products

Design, implement and refine products, services, processes and systems

Combination of manufacturing technology and management science

L02 Select the most appropriate production processes and associated facility arrangements, for manufacturing products of different material types

Production processes:

Common ceramics, composite, metals manufacturing processes

Bonding and jointing technologies, including welding, adhesives, snap fits, interference fits and mechanical assemblies

L03 Analyse how a production system can incorporate a number of different production processes for a given product or assembly

Function of the range of production facilities within a manufacturing plant:

Production design for manufacture and assembly

Cellular and flexible manufacturing systems

Component production using CNC machining centres and automated production processes

Automated materials handling equipment, conveyor systems, automatic guided vehicle servicing, product assembly and production lines

Heat treatment facilities, paint and coating plants

Warehouse, stock storage equipment

The purpose, operation and effects of incorporating concepts such as lean manufacturing and just-in-time (JIT) supply to the production process

L04 Explore the effectiveness of a production system in terms of its operation within the wider manufacturing system

Production systems:

Production performance criteria, through-put rates, yield rates, cost effectiveness, sustainability, flexibility and reliability

Optimising supply chain performance and management

Essential collaboration between manufacturer, supplier and retailer

Production errors and rectification:

Cost in terms of time, material waste, product recall, reputation and litigation

Production data collection, critical evaluation and analysis

The human component:

Cultural openness to new ideas and continuous improvement

Collaboration and information sharing

Performance management and rewards

Engineer training and development practices

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Illustrate the role and purpose of production engineering and its relationship with the other elements of a manufacturing system		M1 Investigate how the production engineer can influence the design process and refine products, services and systems	D1 Analyse how the production engineer supports the development of operational strategies to achieve production and financial objectives
P1 Describe the multiple elements of a modern manufacturing system	P2 Explain the role of the production engineer within a manufacturing system		
L02 Select the most appropriate production processes and associated facility arrangements for manufacturing products of different material types		M2 Discuss the benefits associated with polymer manufacturing process	D2 Evaluate how the choice of bonding and jointing processes influence both the product design and the selection of the most effective production process
P3 Examine the properties and applications of ceramic products manufactured using the sintering, hot pressing, chemical vapour deposition (CVD) and reaction bonding processes	P4 Describe the properties and applications of composite products manufactured using manual and automated lay-up, filament winding, pultrusion and resin transfer moulding processes		

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L03 Analyse how a production system can incorporate a number of different production processes for a given product or assembly		M3 Explain how materials, components and sub-assembly handling and conveyance can impact on the effectiveness and efficiency of a modern manufacturing plant	D3 Analyse the relationship of just-in-time (JIT) and lean manufacturing to total quality and world-class manufacturing and their effects on production processes for a given product or assembly
P5 Review the type and sequence of production processes a product or component would follow from initial design through to manufacture and distribution	P6 Describe the function of the various production facilities within a modern manufacturing plant		
L04 Explore the effectiveness of a production system in terms of its operation within the wider manufacturing system		M4 Explain the immediate and long term effects that production errors and rectification can have on a manufacturing company	D4 Analyse the criteria by which production performance can be measured within the wider manufacturing system
P7 Review the type of data that would be collected and analysed to measure production performance	P8 Describe the measures that can improve production performance criteria		

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

KALPAKJIAN, S. and SCHMID, S. (2009) *Manufacturing Engineering and Technology*. 6th Ed. Prentice Hall.

Websites

<https://www.khanacademy.org/> Khan Academy
(Tutorials)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 23: Computer Aided Design and Manufacture (CAD/CAM)

Unit 48: Manufacturing Systems Engineering

Unit 15: Automation, Robotics and Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs)

Unit code	K/615/1489
Unit level	4
Credit value	15

Introduction

The word automation was not used until the 1940s and it originated in the automotive manufacturing sector as a method designed to reduce labour costs and improve the quality, accuracy and precision of the finished products. We are all now very familiar with the sight of dancing robots, not only in the production of cars but in everything from washing machines to pharmaceuticals. As a result of this technology the products we purchase may have never been touched by human hands and we all benefit from a reduction in costs and improvement in quality.

The aim of this unit is for students to investigate how Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs) and industrial robots can be programmed to successfully implement automated engineering solutions.

Among the topics included in this unit are: PLC system operational characteristics, different types of programming languages, types of robots and cell safety features.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to program PLCs and robotic manipulators to achieve a set task, describe the types and uses of PLCs and robots available, write simple PLC programs, and program industrial robots with straightforward commands and safety factors.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Describe the design and operational characteristics of a PLC system.
2. Design a simple PLC program by considering PLC information, programming and communication techniques.
3. Describe the key elements of industrial robots and be able to program them with straightforward commands to perform a given task.
4. Investigate the design and safe operation of a robot within an industrial application.

Essential Content

L01 Describe the design and operational characteristics of a PLC system

System operational characteristics:

Modular, unitary and rack mounted systems

Characteristics, including speed, memory, scan time, voltage and current limits

Input and output devices (digital, analogue)

Interface requirements

Communication standards (RS-232, RS-422, RS-485, Ethernet)

Internal architecture

Different types of programming languages (IEC 61131-3)

L02 Design a simple PLC program by considering PLC information, programming and communication techniques

Programming language:

Signal types

Number systems (binary, octal, hexadecimal)

Allocation lists of inputs and outputs

Communication techniques

Network methods

Logic functions (AND, OR, XOR)

Associated elements (timers, counters, latches)

Test and debug methods:

Systematic testing and debugging methods

Proper application of appropriate testing and debugging methods

L03 Describe the key elements of industrial robots and be able to program them with straightforward commands to perform a given task

Element considerations:

Types of robots

Mobile robotics

Tools and end effectors

Programming methods

Robot manipulators (kinematics, design, dynamics and control, vision systems, user interfaces)

L04 Investigate the design and safe operation of a robot within an industrial application

Safety:

Cell safety features

Operating envelope

Operational modes

User interfaces

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Describe the design and operational characteristics of a PLC system			D1 Analyse the internal architecture of a typical PLC to determine its operational applications
P1 Describe the key differences of PLC construction styles and their typical applications P2 Determine the types of PLC input and output devices available P3 Describe the different types of communication links used with PLCs	M1 Explain the different types of PLC programming languages available		
L02 Design a simple PLC program by considering PLC information, programming and communication techniques			D2 Produce all elements of a PLC program for a given industrial task and analyse its performance
P4 Design and describe the design elements that have to be considered in the preparation of a PLC programme program P5 Explain how communication connections are correctly used with the PLC	M2 Examine the methods used for testing and debugging the hardware and software		
L03 Describe the key elements of industrial robots and be able to program them with straightforward commands to perform a given task			D3 Design and produce a robot program for a given industrial task
P6 Describe the types of industrial robots and their uses in industry P7 Describe the types of robot end effectors available and their applications	M3 Investigate a given industrial robotic system and make recommendations for improvement		

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Investigate the design and safe operation of a robot within an industrial application		D4 Design a safe working plan for an industrial robotic cell in a given production process to include a full risk assessment
P8 Investigate the safety systems used within an industrial robotic cell	M4 Analyse how the systems in place ensure safe operation of a given industrial robotic cell	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

BOLTON, W. (2015) *Programmable Logic Controllers*. 5th Ed. Elsevier.

DAWKINS, N. (ed.) (2014) *Automation and Controls: A guide to Automation, Controls, PLCs and PLC Programming*.

PEREZ ANDROVER, E. (2012) *Introduction to PLCs: A beginner's guide to Programmable Logic Controllers*.

Websites

http://www.plcmanual.com/	PLC Manual (General Reference)
http://www.plcs.net/	PLC Programming Info (General Reference)
http://www.learnaboutrobots.com/	Learn About Robots Industrial Robots (General Reference)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 6: Mechatronics

Unit 42: Further Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs)

Unit 16: Instrumentation and Control Systems

Unit	D/615/1490
Unit level	4
Credit value	15

Introduction

Instrumentation and control can also be described as measurement automation, which is a very important area of engineering and manufacturing. It is responsible for the safe control of a wide range of processes from power stations to manufacturing facilities and even the cruise control in cars.

This unit introduces students to the important principles, components and practices of instrumentation in the controlling of a process system, together with the terminology, techniques and components that are used in such a system.

Among the topics included in this unit are: instrumentation systems, instrumentation signal terminology, signal conversion and conditioning, process control systems, process controller terminology, system terminology and concepts, system tuning techniques and application of predicted values to a control system.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain why the measurement of system parameters is critical to a successful process control performance, describe when and how such measurements are carried out, and develop skills in applying predicted values in order to ensure stability within a control system for a range of input wave forms.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Identify the instrumentation systems and devices used in process control.
2. Investigate the industrial process control systems.
3. Analyse the control concepts and technologies used within an industrial process.
4. Apply predicted values to ensure stability within a control system.

Essential Content

L01 **Identify the instrumentation systems and devices used in process control**

Instrumentation systems:

Sensors and transducers used in instrumentation including resistive, inductive, capacitive, ultrasonic, pressure, semiconductor, thermocouple and optical

Instrumentation signal terminology:

The importance of instrumentation signal terminology, including accuracy, error, drift, repeatability, reliability, linearity, sensitivity, resolution, range and hysteresis

Signal conversion and conditioning:

Conversion and conditioning of signals, including analogue, digital, optical, microprocessor, wireless and industry standard signal ranges

L02 **Investigate process control systems and controllers**

Process control systems:

The need for process control systems, including quality, safety, consistency, optimisation, efficiency, cost and environmental considerations

Process controller terminology:

Defining deviation, range, set point, process variables, gain, on-off control, two step control and three term control PID (proportional, integral and derivative)

L03 **Analyse the control concepts used within a process**

System terminology and concepts:

Recognise system terminology and concepts, including distance velocity lags, capacity, resistance, static and dynamic gain, stability, feedback types, open and closed loop, feed forward control and control algorithms

System tuning techniques:

Investigate system tuning techniques, including Zeigler-Nichols, continuous cycling, reaction curves, decay methods and overshoot tuning

L04 Apply predicted values to ensure stability within a control system

Predicted values:

Apply predicted values to a control system using simulation to investigate system response accuracy, responses to a range of input signal types, stability of the system and possible improvements

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Identify the instrumentation systems and devices used in process control			D1 Critically review the industrial application of an instrumentation and control process system, using research evidence
P1 Define the types of sensor and transducers used in process control P2 Describe how the sensors and transducers function P3 Define the signal terminology used in process control P4 Explain the different methods and standards used in signal conversion and conditioning	M1 Explore industrial applications for sensors and transducers M2 Analyse the accuracy of the sensors and transducers used in a particular application		
L02 Investigate process control systems and controllers			D2 Develop a recommendation for improvement to process control systems and controllers
P5 Describe the importance of process control systems P6 Define the process controller terminology used in industrial applications	M3 Explain a typical industrial application for a process control system		
L03 Analyse the control concepts used within a process			D3 Analyse the effectiveness of the control concepts used within a given process and suggest improvements
P7 Define the control terminology and concepts used in process control systems P8 Describe the system tuning methods and techniques employed to improve performance	M4 Explain the control terminology, concepts and tuning techniques used in a typical industrial application		
L04 Apply predicted values to ensure stability within a control system			D4 Discuss why the system responds in a certain way as the signals are applied
P9 Demonstrate the correct use of an instrumentation and control virtual simulation	M5 Show how the virtual control system responds to a range of signal inputs		

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

- BOLTON, W. (2015) *Instrumentation and Control Systems*. 2nd Ed. Newnes.
- ESSICK, J. (2012) *Hands-On Introduction to LabVIEW for Scientists and Engineers*. 2nd Ed. Oxford University Press.
- NISE, N.S. (2011) *Control Systems Engineering*. 6th Ed. John Wiley & Sons.

Journals

Journal of Process Control.

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 40: Commercial Programming Software

Unit 54: Further Control Systems Engineering

Unit 17: Quality and Process Improvement

Unit code H/615/1491

Unit level 4

Credit value 15

Introduction

Quality has always been the key to business success and survivability, but it requires organisations to allocate a lot of effort and resources to achieve it. The key to providing quality services and designing top quality products lies in the strength and effectiveness of the processes used in their development; processes which must be constantly reviewed to ensure they operate as efficiently, economically and as safely as possible.

This unit introduces students to the importance of quality assurance processes in a manufacturing or service environment and the principles and theories that underpin them. Topics included in this unit are: tools and techniques used to support quality control, attributes and variables, testing processes, costing modules, the importance of qualifying the costs related to quality, international standards for management (ISO 9000, 14000, 18000), European Foundation for Quality Management (EFQM), principles, tools and techniques of Total Quality Management (TQM) and implementation of Six Sigma.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to illustrate the processes and applications of statistical process, explain the quality control tools used to apply costing techniques, identify the standards expected in the engineering environment to improve efficiency and examine how the concept of Total Quality Management and continuous improvement underpins modern manufacturing and service environments.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Illustrate the applications of statistical process control when applied in an industrial environment to improve efficiency.
2. Analyse cost effective quality control tools.
3. Determine the role of standards in improving efficiency, meeting customer requirements and opening up new opportunities for trade.
4. Analyse the importance of Total Quality Management and continuous improvement in manufacturing environments.

Essential Content

L01 Illustrate the applications of statistical process control when applied in an industrial environment to improve efficiency

Quality control:

The tools and techniques used to support quality control

Attributes and variables

Testing processes

Quality tools and techniques, including SPC

Designing quality into new products and processes using Quality Function Deployment (QFD)

L02 Analyse cost effective quality control tools

Quality costing:

Costing modules

The importance of qualifying the costs related to quality

How costs can be used to improve business performance

L03 Determine the role of standards in improving efficiency, meeting customer requirements and opening up new opportunities for trade

Standards for efficiency:

The history of standards

The role of standards and their importance in enabling and supporting trade and industry

Standards for measurement

International Standards for management (ISO 9000, 14000, 18000)

European Foundation for Quality Management (EFQM) as an aid to developing strategic competitive advantage

L04 Analyse the importance of Total Quality Management and continuous improvement in manufacturing environments

Overview and function of quality:

The importance of quality to industry: how it underpins the ability to improve efficiency, meet customer requirements and improve competitiveness

Principles, tools and techniques of Total Quality Management (TQM)

Understanding and implementation of Six Sigma

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Illustrate the applications of statistical process control when applied in an industrial environment to improve efficiency			D1 Suggest justified recommendations for the application of statistical process control in an industrial environment to improve efficiency
P1 Review the tools and techniques used to support quality control	P2 Describe the processes and applications of statistical process control in industrial environments	M1 Explain the role and effectiveness of the quality tools and techniques used within an industrial environment	
L02 Analyse cost effective quality control tools			D2 Develop a process for the application of an extensive range of quality control tools and techniques with emphasis on costing
P3 Analyse the effective use of quality control tools and techniques	P4 Analyse costing techniques used within industry	M2 Determine with justification the quality control tools and techniques that could be used to improve business performance	
L03 Determine the role of standards in improving efficiency, meeting customer requirements and opening up new opportunities for trade			D3 Illustrate a plan for the application of international standards that would improve efficiency, meet customer requirements and open up new opportunities for trade
P5 Determine required standards to improve efficiency, meet customer requirements and open up new opportunities for trade		M3 Discuss the importance of standards applied in the engineering environment	

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Analyse the importance of Total Quality Management and continuous improvement in manufacturing and service environments		D4 Analyse how the appropriate application of Total Quality Management and continuous improvement in tools and techniques affect quality performance in the manufacturing and service environments
P6 Analyse the principles, tools and techniques of Total Quality Management and continuous improvement P7 Analyse how the concept of Total Quality Management and continuous improvement could help in delivering high quality performance within businesses	M4 Discuss how the appropriate application of Total Quality Management and continuous improvement in tools and techniques affect quality performance in the manufacturing and service environments	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

OAKLAND, J.S. (2003) *Total Quality Management: Text with Cases*. 3rd Ed. Butterworth-Heinemann.

SLACK, N., CHAMBERS, S. and JOHNSTON, R. (2016) *Operations Management*. 8th Ed. Essex: Pearson Education Limited.

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 49: Lean Manufacturing

Unit 18: Maintenance Engineering

Unit code	K/615/1492
Unit level	4
Credit value	15

Introduction

Plant and equipment are one of the biggest assets for any business, costing huge sums of money to replace when things go wrong. Without regular maintenance business owners could see an increase in costly breakdowns, often incurring downtime and significant loss of earnings. Inspection and maintenance are therefore vital to detect and prevent any potential equipment issues or faults that would prevent operation at optimum efficiency. Good maintenance proves itself on a day-to-day basis.

This unit introduces students to the importance of equipment maintenance programmes, the benefits that well-maintained equipment brings to an organisation and the risk factors it faces if maintenance programmes and processes are not considered or implemented. Topics included in this unit are: statutory regulations, organisational safety requirements, maintenance strategies, safe working and maintenance techniques.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain the importance of compliance with statutory regulations associated with asset maintenance, illustrate maintenance techniques adopted by the industry, work safely whilst performing maintenance tasks in an industrial environment and identify inspection and maintenance techniques.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Analyse the impact of relevant statutory regulations and organisational safety requirements on the industrial workplace.
2. Differentiate between the merits and use of different types of maintenance strategies in an industrial workplace.
3. Illustrate competence in working safely by correctly identifying the hazards and risks associated with maintenance techniques.
4. Apply effective inspection and maintenance techniques relative to a particular specialisation e.g. mechanical or electrical.

Essential Content

LO1 **Analyse the impact of relevant statutory regulations and organisational safety requirements on the industrial workplace**

Statutory regulations:

The responsibility of employers and employees with regard to statutory regulations in the workplace, including: HASWA 1974, MHSWR 1999, PUWER 1998, COSHH, LOLER 1998, Working at Height Regulations, Manual Handling Operations Regulations 1992, PPE at Work Regulations 1992, Confined Spaces Regulations 1997, Electricity at Work Regulations 1989, Control of Noise, at Work Regulations 2005, RIDDOR 1995, CDM Regulations 2015, ACoP HSE Guidance Notes and Safety Signs

Organisational safety requirements:

The responsibility of the employee with regard to organisational safety requirements such as the role of the HSE and the power of inspectors, right of inspection, improvement notices and prohibition notice

LO2 **Differentiate between the merits and use of different types of maintenance strategies in an industrial workplace**

Maintenance strategies:

Definition of, and need for, maintenance

Component failure, bathtub curve

Equipment design life and periodic maintenance (e.g. belt adjustment, lubrication etc.)

Reactive, preventive, predictive and reliability centred maintenance

Comparison of the presented maintenance programmes

LO3 **Illustrate competence in working safely by correctly identifying the hazards and risks associated with maintenance techniques**

Working safely:

Life-saving rules for employee safety, such as safety devices and guards, lock out, tag out, electrical work, arc flash, fall protection and permit required confined space working

Development and implementation of safe schemes of work

Lone working

Permit to work (PTW)

Emergency Procedures

Hazard identification and assessment of risk associated with identified hazard

Use of control measures (ERIC SP)

Production of a Risk Assessment & Method Statement for a maintenance procedure

L04 Apply effective inspection and maintenance techniques relative to a particular specialisation, such as electrical or mechanical

Maintenance techniques:

Importance of isolation and making safe before undertaking maintenance

Adherence to PTW process and shift changeover procedures

In-service (live) preventative maintenance e.g. thermographic survey, partial discharge inspection

Compliance with manufacturer's recommended inspection and maintenance procedures, using manufacturer's data as case studies

Look, listen and feel philosophy. Visual inspections

Measurements: electrical and mechanical. Mechanical operations test

Functional tests e.g. exercise switching mechanisms

Recording data and maintenance records

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
LO1 Analyse the impact of relevant statutory regulations and organisational safety requirements in the industrial workplace			D1 Determine the likely consequences of non-adherence to relevant health and safety legislation by employers and employees D2 Critically analyse the potential impact of a workplace inspection by a Health and Safety Executive inspector
P1 Describe the key features of health and safety regulations in the workplace P2 Explain the role of the Health and Safety Executive in health and safety in the workplace		M1 Analyse the consequences of employers not abiding by health and safety legislation and regulations in the workplace	
LO2 Differentiate between the merits and use of different types of maintenance strategies in an industrial workplace			D3 Illustrate the most appropriate maintenance system in an industrial workplace D4 Assess the likely consequences of not completing a maintenance regime in an industrial workplace
P3 Describe the methods used to complete engineering maintenance in an industrial workplace P4 Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of different strategies to complete maintenance in an industrial workplace		M2 Explain the importance of carrying out engineering maintenance in an industrial workplace	
LO3 Illustrate competence in working safely by correctly identifying the hazards and risks associated with maintenance techniques			D5 Analyse, using actual workplace procedures, the methods used to deal with identified hazards in accordance with statutory legal requirements and workplace policies and recommend improvements
P5 Describe methods used to identify risks and their associated hazards P6 Carry out a risk assessment on a typical maintenance technique		M3 Discuss the importance of completing risk assessments M4 Explain how control measures are used to prevent accidents M5 Complete a method statement for a typical maintenance technique	

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Apply effective inspection and maintenance techniques relative to a particular specialisation such as mechanical or electrical		D6 Justify appropriate inspection and maintenance techniques across industrial plant assets
P6 Apply effective inspection and maintenance techniques in an industrial or simulated environment, recording the appropriate sequence of procedures	M5 Analyse the effectiveness of these inspection and maintenance techniques in plant asset management	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

MOBLEY, K. (2014) *Maintenance Engineering Handbook*. 8th Ed. McGraw Hill.

RICHARDSON, D.C. (2013) *Plant Equipment and Maintenance Engineering Handbook*. McGraw Hill.

Websites

<http://www.soe.org.uk/> SOE Society of Operations Engineers
IplantE
(General Reference)

<http://www.imeche.org/> The Institution of Mechanical Engineers
(General Reference)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 30: Operations and Plant Management

Unit 4: Managing a Professional Engineering Project

Unit 19: Electrical and Electronic Principles

Unit code M/615/1493

Unit level 4

Credit value 15

Introduction

Electrical engineering is mainly concerned with the movement of energy and power in electrical form, and its generation and consumption. Electronics is mainly concerned with the manipulation of information, which may be acquired, stored, processed or transmitted in electrical form. Both depend on the same set of physical principles, though their applications differ widely. A study of electrical or electronic engineering depends very much on these underlying principles; these form the foundation for any qualification in the field, and are the basis of this unit.

The physical principles themselves build initially from our understanding of the atom, the concept of electrical charge, electric fields, and the behaviour of the electron in different types of material. This understanding is readily applied to electric circuits of different types, and the basic circuit laws and electrical components emerge. Another set of principles is built around semiconductor devices, which become the basis of modern electronics. An introduction to semiconductor theory leads to a survey of the key electronic components, primarily different types of diodes and transistors.

Electronics is very broadly divided into analogue and digital applications. The final section of the unit introduces the fundamentals of these, using simple applications. Thus, under analogue electronics, the amplifier and its characteristics are introduced. Under digital electronics, voltages are applied as logic values, and simple circuits made from logic gates are considered.

On successful completion of this unit students will have a good and wide-ranging grasp of the underlying principles of electrical and electronic circuits and devices, and will be able to proceed with confidence to further study.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Apply an understanding of fundamental electrical quantities to evaluate simple circuits with constant voltages and currents.
2. Evaluate simple circuits with sinusoidal voltages and currents.
3. Describe the basis of semiconductor action, and its application to simple electronic devices.
4. Explain the difference between digital and analogue electronics, describing simple applications of each.

Essential Content

L01 **Apply an understanding of fundamental electrical quantities to analyse simple circuits with constant voltages and currents**

Fundamental electrical quantities and concepts:

Charge, current, electric field, energy in an electrical context, potential, potential difference, resistance, electromotive force, conductors and insulators

Circuit laws:

Voltage sources, Ohm's law, resistors in series and parallel, the potential divider

Kirchhoff's and Thevenin's laws; superposition

Energy and power:

Transfer into the circuit through, for example, battery, solar panel or generator, and out of the circuit as heat or mechanical. Maximum power transfer

L02 **Analyse simple circuits with sinusoidal voltages and currents**

Fundamental quantities of periodic waveforms:

Frequency, period, peak value, phase angle, waveforms, the importance of sinusoids

Mathematical techniques:

Trigonometric representation of a sinusoid. Rotating phasors and the phasor diagram. Complex notation applied to represent magnitude and phase

Reactive components:

Principles of the inductor and capacitor. Basic equations, emphasising understanding of rates of change (of voltage with capacitor, current with inductor). Current and voltage phase relationships with steady sinusoidal quantities, representation on phasor diagram

Circuits with sinusoidal sources:

Current and voltage in series and parallel RL, RC and RLC circuits. Frequency response and resonance

Mains voltage single-phase systems. Power, root-mean-square power quantities, power factor

Ideal transformer and rectification:

The ideal transformer, half-wave and full-wave rectification. Use of smoothing capacitor, ripple voltage

L03 Describe the basis of semiconductor action, and its application to simple electronic devices

Semiconductor material:

Characteristics of semiconductors; impact of doping, p-type and n-type semiconductor materials, the p-n junction in forward and reverse bias

Simple semiconductor devices:

Characteristics and simple operation of junction diode, Zener diode, light emitting diode, bipolar transistor, Junction Field Effect Transistor (FET) and Metal Oxide Semiconductor FET (MOSFET). The bipolar transistor as switch and amplifier

L04 Explain the difference between digital and analogue electronics, describing simple applications of each

Analogue concepts:

Analogue quantities, examples of electrical representation of, for example, audio, temperature, speed, or acceleration

The voltage amplifier; gain, frequency response, input and output resistance, effect of source and load resistance (with source and amplifier output modelled as Thevenin equivalent)

Digital concepts:

Logic circuits implemented with switches or relays

Use of voltages to represent logic 0 and 1, binary counting

Logic Gates (AND, OR, NAND, NOR) to create simple combinational logic functions

Truth Tables

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Apply an understanding of fundamental electrical quantities to analyse simple circuits with constant voltages and currents			D1 Apply the principles of circuit theory to complex circuits, with constant sources, explaining and evaluating the operation of that circuit
P1 Apply the principles of circuit theory to simple circuits with constant sources, to explain the operation of that circuit	M1 Apply the principles of circuit theory to a range of circuits with constant sources, to explain the operation of that circuit		
L02 Analyse simple circuits with sinusoidal voltages and currents			D2 Critically analyse the principles of circuit theory as applied to complex circuits, with sinusoidal sources, explaining and evaluating the operation of that circuit
P2 Analyse the principles of circuit theory as applied to simple circuits with sinusoidal sources, to explain the operation of that circuit	M2 Analyse the principles of circuit theory to a range of more complex circuits with sinusoidal sources, to explain the operation of that circuit		
L03 Describe the basis of semiconductor action, and its application to simple electronic devices			D3 Critically evaluate the performance of a range of discrete semiconductor devices in terms of simple semiconductor theory, and suggesting appropriate applications for each
P3 Describe the behaviour of a p-n junction in terms of semiconductor behaviour P4 Demonstrate the action of a range of semiconductor devices	M3 Describe and evaluate a range of discrete semiconductor devices in terms of simple semiconductor theory		
L04 Explain the difference between digital and analogue electronics, describing simple applications of each			D4 Critically evaluate the applications of analogue and digital electronics, in terms of their relative advantages, explaining with examples where each might be applied
P5 Explain the difference between digital and analogue electronics P6 Explain amplifier characteristics P7 Explain the operation of a simple circuit made of logic gates	M4 Describe the relative applications and benefits of analogue and digital electronics, explaining with example where each might be applied		

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

BIRD, J. (2013) *Electrical Circuit Theory and Technology*. Routledge.

HUGHES, E., HILEY, J., BROWN, K. and MCKENZIE-SMITH, I. (2012) *Electrical and Electronic Technology*. Pearson.

SINGH, K. (2011) *Engineering Mathematics through Applications*. Palgrave.

BTEC Higher Nationals Study Guide (2011) Custom Publishing. Pearson.

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 20: Digital Principles

Unit 22: Electronic Circuits and Devices

Unit 52: Further Electrical, Electronic and Digital Principles

Unit 20: Digital Principles

Unit code T/615/1494

Unit level 4

Credit value 15

Introduction

While the broad field of electronics covers many aspects, it is digital electronics which now has the greatest impact. This is immediately evident in the mobile phone, laptop, and numerous other everyday devices and systems. Digital electronics allows us to process, store, and transmit data in digital form in robust ways, which minimises data degradation.

The unit introduces the two main branches of digital electronics, combinational and sequential. Thus the student gains familiarity in the fundamental elements of digital circuits, notably different types of logic gates and bistables. The techniques by which such circuits are analysed are introduced and applied, including Truth Tables, Boolean Algebra, Karnaugh Maps, and Timing Diagrams.

The theory of digital electronics has little use unless the circuits can be built – at low cost, high circuit density, and in large quantity. Thus the key digital technologies are introduced. These include the conventional TTL (Transistor-Transistor Logic) and CMOS (Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor). Importantly, the unit moves on to programmable logic, including the Field Programmable Gate Array (FPGA). Finally, some standard digital subsystems, which become important elements of major systems such as microprocessors, are introduced and evaluated.

On successful completion of this unit students will have a good grasp of the principles of digital electronic circuits, and will be able to proceed with confidence to further study.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explain and analyse simple combinational logic circuits.
2. Explain and analyse simple sequential logic circuits.
3. Describe and evaluate the technologies used to implement digital electronic circuits.
4. Describe and analyse a range of digital subsystems, hence establishing the building blocks for larger systems.

Essential Content

L01 Explain and analyse simple combinational logic circuits

Concepts of combinational logic:

Simple logic circuits implemented with electro-mechanical switches and transistors. Circuits built from AND, OR, NAND, NOR, XOR gates to achieve logic functions, e.g. majority voting, simple logical controls, adders

Number systems, and binary arithmetic:

Binary, Decimal, Hexadecimal number representation, converting between, applications and relative advantages. Addition and subtraction in binary, range of n -bit numbers

Analysis of logic circuits:

Truth Tables, Boolean Algebra, de Morgan's theorem, Karnaugh Maps

Simplification and optimisation of circuits using these techniques

L02 Explain and analyse simple sequential logic circuits

Sequential logic elements and circuits:

SR latch built from NAND or NOR gates

Clocked and edge-triggered bistables, D and JK types

Simple sequential circuits, including shift registers and counters

Timing Diagrams

Memory technologies:

Memory terminology, overview of memory technologies including Static RAM, Dynamic RAM and Flash memory cells

Relative advantages in terms of density, volatility and power consumption

Typical applications, e.g. in memory stick, mobile phone, laptop

L03 Describe and evaluate the technologies used to implement digital electronic circuits

Logic values represented by voltages:

The benefit of digital representation of information

The concept of logic input and output values and thresholds

Digital technologies:

Introduction to discrete logic families, CMOS and TTL, relative advantages in terms of speed, power consumption, density

Programmable logic, FPGAs, relative advantages and applications

L04 Describe and analyse a range of digital subsystems, hence establishing the building blocks for larger systems

User interface:

Examples to include switches, light emitting diodes and simple displays

Digital subsystems:

Examples to be drawn from adders (half, full, n -bit), multiplexers and demultiplexers, coders and decoders, counters applied as timers, shift registers applied to serial data transmission, elements of the ALU (Arithmetic Logic Unit). Emphasis on how these can be applied, and how they might fit into a larger system

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
LO1 Explain and analyse simple combinational logic circuits			D1 Analyse, optimise and enhance combinational logic circuits, making best use of Truth Table, Boolean Algebra and Karnaugh Map
P1 Explain and analyse the operation of a simple combinational logic circuit, making limited use of Truth Table, Boolean Algebra and Karnaugh Map	M1 Analyse and optimise the operation of a combinational logic circuit making good use of Truth Table, Boolean Algebra and Karnaugh Map		
LO2 Explain and analyse simple sequential logic circuits			D2 Analyse, optimise and enhance a sequential logic circuit, making use of Timing Diagrams
P2 Explain and analyse the operation of a simple sequential logic circuit, making use of Timing Diagrams	M2 Analyse and optimise a simple sequential logic circuit, making use of Timing Diagrams		
LO3 Describe and evaluate the technologies used to implement digital electronic circuits			D3 Apply lab equipment to configure, test and evaluate digital circuits, comparing and evaluating characteristics of different technologies
P3 Apply lab equipment to describe and evaluate simple digital circuits	M3 Apply lab equipment to configure and test simple digital circuits		
LO4 Describe and analyse a range of digital subsystems, hence establishing the building blocks for larger systems			D4 Describe and critically evaluate a range of different logic subsystems, comparing these with other techniques or subsystems available, indicating the place they might take in a larger system
P4 Describe and analyse the principles of a range of different logic subsystems	M4 Describe and analyse a range of different logic subsystems, indicating the place they might take in a larger system		

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

FLOYD, T.L. (2015) *Digital Fundamentals*. Pearson.

HUGHES, E., HILEY, J., BROWN, K. and MCKENZIE-SMITH, I. (2012) *Electrical and Electronic Technology*. Pearson.

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 19: Electrical and Electronic Principles

Unit 22: Electronic Circuits and Devices

Unit 52: Further Electrical, Electronic and Digital Principles

Unit 21: Electrical Machines

Unit code A/615/1495

Unit level 4

Credit value 15

Introduction

Electrical machines can be found in manufacturing, transport, consumer appliances and hospitals. People will come across them every day in their home and at work. They convert energy in three ways: transformers which change the voltage level of an alternating current; motors which convert electrical energy to mechanical energy; and generators which convert mechanical energy to electrical energy. Transducers and actuators are also energy converters, and can be found in a wide range of industrial and domestic applications.

This unit introduces students to the characteristics and operational parameters of a range of electromagnetic powered machines that are used in a variety of applications. Among the topics included in this unit are: principles underlying the operation and construction of transformers, induction motors, synchronous machines, electromagnetic transducers, actuators, and generators; and operating characteristics of electrical machines such as voltage, current, speed of operation, power rating, electromagnetic interference (EMI) and efficiency.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to identify the constructional features and applications of transformers; investigate the starting methods and applications of three-phase induction motors and synchronous machines; investigate the types of generator available in the industry by assessing their practical application; and analyse the operating characteristics of electromagnetic transducers and actuators.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Assess the constructional features and applications of transformers.
2. Analyse the starting methods and applications of three-phase induction motors and synchronous machines.
3. Investigate the types of generator available in industry by assessing their practical applications.
4. Analyse the operating characteristics of electromagnetic transducers and actuators.

Essential Content

L01 **Assess the constructional features and applications of transformers**

Constructional features:

Construction, application, characteristics and testing of transformer types such as: step up, step down, and isolating

Shell and core, windings, connections, efficiency, short circuit and no-load testing, and equivalent circuit

L02 **Analyse the starting methods and applications of the three-phase induction motors and synchronous machines**

Methods and applications:

Construction, application, characteristics and testing of induction and synchronous motors

Types of electric motors and their practical applications

Starting methods

Voltages, power, speed, torque, inertia, EMI, and efficiency

Cooling and protection devices

L03 **Investigate the types of generators available in the industry by assessing their practical application**

Types of generators available:

Construction, application, characteristics and testing of generators

Types (direct current, alternating current and self-excitation)

Practical applications

Generation methods

Voltages, power, speed, torque, inertia, EMI, efficiency

Cooling and protection devices

L04 Analyse the operating characteristics of electromagnetic transducers and actuators

Operating characteristics:

Construction, application, characteristics and testing of electromagnetic transducers and actuators

Transducer types (active, passive, sensor), actuator types (solenoids, linear, rotary)

Practical applications.

Voltage and current requirements, hysteresis and speed of operation

Torque

Insulation Protection (IP) rating

Contact types

Back Electromotive Force (EMF), EMI and efficiency

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Assess the constructional features and applications of transformers			D1 Assess the efficiency of a number of available transformers and make a recommendation for an actual operational requirement
P1 Examine the types of transformers available	M1 Illustrate the operation of the transformer, considering the equivalent circuit		
P2 Discuss suitable applications for available transformers			
P3 Discuss the different methods of connections available for three-phase transformers			
L02 Analyse the starting methods and applications of the three-phase induction motors and synchronous machines			D2 Critically evaluate the efficiency of a number of available motors and make a recommendation for a specified operational requirement
P4 Analyse the types of electrical motors available, discussing suitable applications	M2 Justify the selection of a motor for a specific industrial application		
P5 Analyse the different methods of starting induction motors and synchronous machines			
L03 Investigate the types of generators available in the industry by assessing their practical application			D3 Assess the efficiency of a number of available generators and make a recommendation for a specified operational requirement
P6 Explain the types and construction of generators	M3 Justify the application of a specific type of generator		
P7 Identify a generator for a specific application, considering their characteristics			

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Analyse the operating characteristics of electromagnetic transducers and actuators		D4 Analyse the practical application of transducers and actuators in an industrial situation and make recommendations to improve the operating efficiency of the units in use
P8 Analyse the operation, types and uses of electromotive transducers and actuators, examining features that support their suitability for specific applications	M4 Justify the selection of suitable transducers for specific industrial applications	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

DE SILVA, C.W. (2015) *Sensors and Actuators: Engineering System Instrumentation*. 2nd Ed. CRC Press.

HUGHES, A. (2013) *Electric Motors and Drives: Fundamentals, Types and Applications*. 4th Ed. Newnes.

Websites

<https://ocw.mit.edu> MIT open courseware
Electric Machines
(Tutorials)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 43: Machines and Drives

Unit 22: Electronic Circuits and Devices

Unit code	F/615/1496
Unit level	4
Credit value	15

Introduction

Electronics is all around us today: in our homes, the workplace, cars and even on or in our bodies. It's hard to believe that it was only in 1947 that the transistor was developed by American physicists John Bardeen, Walter Brattain, and William Shockley. The invention of the transistor paved the way for cheaper radios, calculators and computers.

This unit introduces students to the use of electronics manufacturers' data to analyse the performance of circuits and devices, the operational characteristics of amplifier circuits, the types and effects of feedback on a circuit performance, and the operation and application of oscillators. They will also be introduced to the application of testing procedures to electronic devices and circuits, and use the findings of the tests to evaluate their operation.

Among the topics included in this unit are: power amplifiers, class A, B and AB; operational amplifiers, inverting, non-inverting, differential, summing, integrator, differentiator; types such as open, closed, positive and negative feedback; frequency, stability, frequency drift, distortion, amplitude, wave shapes and testing procedures.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to determine the operational characteristics of amplifier circuits, investigate the types and effects of feedback on an amplifier's performance, examine the operation and application of oscillators and apply testing procedures to electronic devices and circuits.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Determine the operational characteristics of amplifier circuits.
2. Investigate the types and effects of feedback on an amplifier's performance.
3. Examine the operation and application of oscillators.
4. Apply testing procedures to electronic devices and circuits.

Essential Content

L01 Determine the operational characteristics of amplifier circuits

Operational characteristics:

Power amplifiers: class A, B and AB

Operational amplifiers: inverting, non-inverting, differential, summing, integrator, differentiator, comparator, instrumentation, Schmitt trigger, active filters

Gain, bandwidth, frequency response, input and output impedance

Distortion and noise

L02 Investigate the types and effects of feedback on an amplifier's performance

Types and effects:

Types including open, closed, positive and negative feedback

Effect of feedback on gain, bandwidth, distortion, noise, stability, input and output impedance

L03 Examine the operation and application of oscillators

Operation and application:

Types of oscillators such as Wien bridge, Twin-T, R-C ladder, L-C coupled, transistor, operational amplifier, crystal

Frequency, stability, frequency drift, distortion, amplitude and wave shapes

L04 Apply testing procedures to electronic devices and circuits

Testing procedures:

Measuring performance, using practical results and computer simulations

Voltage gain, current, bandwidth, frequency response, output power, input and output impedance

Distortion and noise

Devices to test:

Semiconductors

Integrated circuits

Amplifiers

Oscillators

Filters

Power supplies

Integrated circuit (IC) voltage regulators

Combined analogue and digital IC's

Component manufacturer's data:

Specifications, manuals and circuit diagrams

Use of testing equipment:

Meters, probes and oscilloscopes

Signal generators and signal analysers, logic analysers

Virtual test equipment

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Determine the operational characteristics of amplifier circuits		M1 Explain the results obtained from applying practical tests on an amplifier's performance	D1 Assess the results obtained from the application of practical and virtual tests on amplifier circuits studied
P1 Describe the types of amplifiers available and their applications	P2 Examine the different performance characteristics of types of amplifier		
L02 Investigate the types and effects of feedback on an amplifier's performance		M2 Perform practical tests to show the effect of feedback on an amplifier's performance	D2 Evaluate the results of practical and virtual tests to analyse the effect of feedback on an amplifier's performance
P3 Examine the types of feedback available and their effect on the amplifier's performance	P4 Describe a circuit which employs negative feedback		
L03 Examine the operation and application of oscillators		M3 Assess the performance characteristics of types of oscillators	D3 Analyse the results obtained from applying practical and virtual tests on oscillators studied
P5 Examine types of available oscillators and their applications			
L04 Apply testing procedures to electronic devices and circuits		M4 Perform tests on electronic devices and circuits, recording results and recommending appropriate action	D4 Analyse and compare the results obtained from applying practical and virtual tests on devices and circuits studied
P6 Select suitable electronic devices and their parent circuits and identify the appropriate manufacturer's data sheets	P7 Interpret relevant information from manufacturer's data when testing electronic devices and circuits		

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

BOYLESTAD, R.L. and NASHELSKY, L. (2013) *Electronic Devices and Circuit Theory*. 11th Ed. Pearson.

FLOYD, T.L. and BUCHLA, D. (2013) *Electronics Fundamentals: Circuits, Devices & Applications*. 8th Ed. Pearson.

HOROWITZ, P. and HILL, W. (2015) *The Art of Electronics*. 3rd Ed. Cambridge University Press.

Websites

www.electronics-tutorials.ws	Electronic Tutorials Amplifiers (Tutorials)
www.learnabout-electronics.org	Learn About Electronics Amplifiers (Tutorials)
www.learnabout-electronics.org	Learn About Electronics Oscillators (Tutorials)
www.electronics-tutorials.ws	Electronic Tutorials Oscillators (Tutorials)
http://learn.mikroe.com/	Mikro Elektronika Introduction to checking components (E-Book)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 43: Machines and Drives

Unit 23: Computer Aided Design and Manufacture (CAD/CAM)

Unit code	J/615/1497
Unit level	4
Credit value	15

Introduction

The capacity to quickly produce finished components from a software model is now essential in the competitive world of manufacturing. Businesses now invest heavily in Computer Aided Design (CAD) software, Computer Aided Manufacture (CAM) software and Computer Numerical Control (CNC) machines to facilitate this, thus reducing product lead times. CAD gives design engineers the platform to creatively model components that meet the specific needs of the consumer. When these models are combined with CAM software, manufacturing is made a reality.

This unit introduces students to all the stages of the CAD/CAM process and to the process of modelling components using CAD software specifically suitable for transferring to CAM software. Among the topics included in this unit are: programming methods, component set-up, tooling, solid modelling, geometry manipulation, component drawing, importing solid model, manufacturing simulation, data transfer, CNC machine types and inspections.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to illustrate the key principles of manufacturing using a CAD/CAM system; produce 3D solid models of a component suitable for transfer into a CAM system; use CAM software to generate manufacturing simulations of a component; and design a dimensionally accurate component on a CNC machine using a CAD/CAM system.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Describe the key principles of manufacturing using a CAD/CAM system.
2. Produce 3D solid models of a component suitable for transfer into a CAM system.
3. Use CAM software to generate manufacturing simulations of a component.
4. Design and produce a dimensionally accurate component on a CNC machine using a CAD/CAM system.

Essential Content

L01 **Describe the key principles of manufacturing using a CAD/CAM system**

Hardware:

CAD workstation, printers, USB flash drives and network cables

Software:

Operating systems, hard disk requirements, processor, CAD software e.g. SolidWorks, Autodesk Inventor, CATIA; CAM software e.g. Edgecam, Delcam, GibbsCAM, SolidCAM

Inputs:

CAD model, material specifications, tooling data, spindle speeds and feed rate data calculations

Outputs:

CAM files, program code and coordinates, manufacturing sequences, tooling requirements, auxiliary data

Programming methods:

CAD/CAM, manual programming, conversational programming

Component set-up:

Zero datum setting, tool set-up and offsets, axis of movements

Work-holding:

Machine vice, chuck, fixtures, clamping, jigs

Tooling:

Milling cutters, lathe tools, drills, specialist tooling, tool holders, tool turrets and carousels

L02 **Produce 3D solid models of a component suitable for transfer into a CAM system**

Solid modelling:

Extrude, cut, fillet, chamfer, holes, sweep, revolve, lines, arcs, insert planes, properties of solid models e.g. mass, centre of gravity, surface area

Geometry manipulation:

Mirror, rotate, copy, array, offset

Component drawing:

Set-up template, orthographic and multi-view drawings, sections, scale, dimensions, drawing

Attributes e.g. material, reference points, tolerances, finish

L03 Use CAM software to generate manufacturing simulations of a component

Import solid model:

Set-up, model feature and geometry identification, stock size, material

Manufacturing simulation:

Operations e.g. roughing and finishing, pockets, slots, profiling, holes, tool and work change positions, tool sizes and IDs, speeds and feeds, cutter path simulations, program editing

L04 Design and produce a dimensionally accurate component on a CNC machine using a CAD/CAM system

CNC machine types:

Machining centres, turning centres, MCUs e.g. Fanuc, Siemens, and Heidenhain

Data transfer:

Structured data between CAD and CAM software e.g. datum position and model orientation; file types e.g. SLDPRT, parasolid, STL, IGES, DXF; transfer to CNC machine e.g. network, USB, Ethernet

Inspection:

Manual inspection e.g. using Vernier gauges, bore micrometres

Automated inspection e.g. co-ordinate measuring machine (CMM), stages of inspection throughout manufacturing process

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L01 Describe the key principles of manufacturing using a CAD/CAM system		D1 Critically evaluate, using illustrative examples, the impact of different machining conditions and specifications on component manufacturing
P1 Describe the hardware and software elements of a typical CAD/CAM system P2 Describe, with examples, the inputs and outputs of the CAD/CAM process P3 Explain the different methods of component set-up, work-holding and tooling available on CNC machines	M1 Analyse the suitability of different programming methods of CNC machines	
L02 Produce 3D solid models of a component suitable for transfer into a CAM system		D2 Critically evaluate the effectiveness of using a CAD/CAM system and solid modelling to manufacture components
P4 Design and produce a CAD solid model of a component to be manufactured on a CNC machine P5 Design a working drawing of a component containing specific manufacturing detail	M2 Assess the importance of using different geometry manipulation methods for efficient model production	
L03 Use CAM software to generate manufacturing simulations of a component		D3 Analyse the effect of applying different manufacturing techniques and modifications to achieve an optimised production time
P6 Use CAM software to generate a geometrically accurate CAD solid model of a component	M3 Using CAM software, generate cutter tool path simulations	

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Design and produce a dimensionally accurate component on a CNC machine using a CAD/CAM system		D4 Critically analyse, giving illustrative examples, the different methods of data transfer through a CAD/CAM system
P7 Detail a part program for a component using CAM software and transfer the part program to a CNC machine and manufacture a component P8 Describe the structural elements of a CNC Machining Centre P9 Review a component manufactured on a CNC machine to verify its accuracy	M4 Analyse different methods of component inspection used in manufacturing	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

KUNWOO, L. (2000) *Principles of CAD/CAM/CAE*. Pearson.

McMAHAN, C. and BROWNE, J. (1999) *CADCAM: Principles, Practice and Manufacturing Management*. Prentice Hall.

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: Engineering Design

Unit 29: Electro, Pneumatic and Hydraulic Systems

Unit code L/615/1498

Unit level 4

Credit value 15

Introduction

Hydraulics and pneumatics incorporate the importance of fluid power theory in modern industry. This is the technology that deals with the generation, control, and movement of mechanical elements or systems with the use of pressurised fluids in a confined system. In respect of hydraulics and pneumatics, both liquids and gases are considered fluids. Oil hydraulics employs pressurised liquid petroleum oils and synthetic oils, whilst pneumatic systems employ an everyday recognisable process of releasing compressed air to the atmosphere after performing the work.

The aim of this module is to develop students' knowledge and appreciation of the applications of fluid power systems in modern industry. Students will investigate and design pneumatic, hydraulic, electro-pneumatic and electro-hydraulic systems. This unit offers the opportunity for students to examine the characteristics of fluid power components and evaluate work-related practices and applications of these systems.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain applications of hydraulic and pneumatic systems in the production industry, determine the fundamental principles and practical techniques for obtaining solutions to problems, appreciate real-life applications of pneumatic and hydraulic systems, and investigate the importance of structured maintenance techniques.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Calculate the parameters of pneumatic and hydraulic systems.
2. Identify the notation and symbols of pneumatic and hydraulic components.
3. Examine the applications of pneumatic and hydraulic systems.
4. Investigate the maintenance of pneumatic and hydraulic systems.

Essential Content

L01 Calculate the parameters of pneumatic and hydraulic systems

Pneumatic and hydraulic theory:

Combined and ideal gas laws: Boyle's Law, Charles' Law and Gay-Lussac's Law

Fluid flow, calculation of pressure and velocity using Bernoulli's Equation for Newtonian fluids

System performance, volumetric operational and isothermal efficiency

L02 Identify the notation and symbols of pneumatic and hydraulic components

Performance of hydraulic and pneumatic components:

The use and importance of International Standards, including relative symbols and devices

Fluid power diagrams

Pneumatic and hydraulic critical equipment and their purpose

Circuit diagrams, component interaction and purpose

Dynamics of modern system use

L03 Examine the applications of pneumatic and hydraulic systems

System applications:

Calculation of appropriate capacities and specifications

Applied functions of control elements

Design and testing of hydraulic and pneumatic systems

Fluid power in real-life examples

Valued component choice

L04 Investigate the maintenance of pneumatic and hydraulic systems

Efficiency of systems:

Efficient maintenance: accurate records and procedures to ensure efficiency

Functional inspection, modern techniques to limit production problems, quality control

Testing, efficient procedures to enable component longevity, recommendations

Fault finding, diagnostic techniques, effects of malfunctions, rectification of faults

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Calculate the parameters of pneumatic and hydraulic systems			D1 Produce a presentation analysing fluid viscosity using Stokes' Law and validate how this relates to Navier–Stokes equations
P1 Determine the change in volume and pressure in pneumatic systems P2 Determine the change in volume and pressure in hydraulic systems		M1 Using Bernoulli's Equation, calculate values at stationary incompressible flow	
L02 Identify the notation and symbols of pneumatic and hydraulic components			D2 Stating any assumptions, compare the applications of practical hydraulic and pneumatic systems
P3 Identify the purpose of components on a given diagram P4 Explain the use of logic functions used within circuits P5 Illustrate the use of advanced functions and their effect on circuit performance		M2 Assess the different factors that impact on actuator choice for a given application	
L03 Examine the applications of pneumatic and hydraulic systems			D3 Evaluate the design modifications that can be introduced to improve the functionality and maintenance of pneumatic and hydraulic systems without creating reliability issues
P6 Investigate and analyse the design and function of a simple hydraulic or pneumatic system in a production environment P7 Define the purpose and function of electrical control elements in a given hydraulic or pneumatic system		M3 Justify the measures taken to improve circuit design in respect of performance	

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Investigate the maintenance of pneumatic and hydraulic systems		D4 Evaluate the importance of maintenance, inspection, testing and fault finding in respect of improved system performance
P8 Recognise system faults and potential hazards in pneumatic and hydraulic systems P9 Determine regular testing procedures to ensure efficient maintenance of pneumatic and hydraulic systems	M4 Compare construction and operation of hydraulic and pneumatic systems with regards to legislation and safety issues	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

PARR, A. (1999) *Hydraulics and Pneumatics: A Technician's Guide*. 2nd Ed. Butterworth-Heinemann.

ROHNER, R. (1995) *Industrial Hydraulic Control*. John Wiley & Sons.

STACEY, C. (1997) *Practical Pneumatics*. Elsevier.

TURNER, I. (1996) *Engineering Applications of Pneumatics and Hydraulics*. Butterworth-Heinemann.

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 11: Fluid Mechanics

Unit 64: Thermofluids

Unit 30: Operations and Plant Management

Unit code R/615/1499

Unit level 4

Credit value 15

Introduction

The challenges of modern manufacturing industries require today's operations engineers to adopt a multi-skilled methodology when dealing with the array of complex engineering problems they are faced with. Long gone are the days of 'pure' mechanical or electrical maintenance staff; operations engineers may well specialise within one discipline, but they must have the knowledge and ability to safely tackle problems that could encompass many varied engineering fields, if they are to keep the wheels of industry in motion.

The underlying aims of this unit are to develop the students' knowledge of the engineering fundamentals that augment the design and operation of plant engineering systems, and to furnish them with the tools and techniques to maintain the ever more technological equipment.

The students are introduced to the concept of thermodynamic systems and their properties in the first learning outcome; this will provide a platform for the topic of heat transfer in industrial applications (as covered in learning outcome four) and underpin their future studies in subsequent units. The second learning outcome examines common mechanical power transmission system elements found in numerous production/manufacturing environments, whilst the third learning outcome investigates fundamental static and dynamic fluid systems.

On completion of this unit students will be able to describe the fundamentals that underpin the operation of the systems they deal with on a daily basis and apply these fundamentals to the successful maintenance of these systems.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Analyse fundamental thermodynamic systems and their properties.
2. Investigate power transmission systems.
3. Determine the parameters of static and dynamic fluid systems
4. Examine the principles of heat transfer in industrial applications.

Essential Content

L01 Analyse fundamental thermodynamic systems and their properties

Fundamental system:

Forms of energy and basic definitions

Definitions of systems (open and closed) and surroundings

First law of thermodynamics

The gas laws: Charles' Law, Boyle's Law, general gas law and the Characteristic Gas Equation

The importance and applications of pressure/volume diagrams and the concept of work done

Polytropic processes: constant pressure, constant volume, adiabatic and isothermal processes

L02 Investigate power transmission systems

Power transmission:

Flat and v-section belts drives: maximum power and initial tension requirements

Constant wear and constant pressure theories

Gear trains: simple and compound gear trains; determination of velocity ratio; torque and power

Friction clutches: flat, single and multi-plate clutches; maximum power transmitted

Conical clutches: maximum power transmitted

L03 Determine the parameters of static and dynamic fluid systems

Fluid flow theory:

Continuity equations

Application of Bernoulli's Equation

Reynolds number; turbulent and laminar flow

Measuring devices for fluids: flow, viscosity and pressure

Determination of head loss in pipes by D'Arcy's formula, use of Moody diagrams

Immersed surfaces: centre of pressure, use of parallel axis theorem for immersed surfaces

Hydrostatic pressure and thrust on immersed surfaces

L04 Examine the principles of heat transfer in industrial applications

Heat transfer:

Modes of transmission of heat: conduction, convection and radiation

Heat transfer through composite walls; use of U and k values

Recuperator, regenerator and evaporative heat exchangers

Application of formulae to heat exchangers

Heat losses in thick and thin walled pipes: optimum lagging thickness

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Analyse fundamental thermodynamic systems and their properties			D1 Illustrate the importance of expressions for work done in thermodynamic processes by applying first principles
P1 Examine the operation of thermodynamic systems and their properties P2 Explain the application of the first law of thermodynamics to appropriate systems P3 Explain the relationships between system constants for a perfect gas	M1 Identify the index of compression in polytrophic processes		
L02 Investigate power transmission systems			D2 Compare the 'constant wear' and 'constant pressure' theories as applied to friction clutches
P4 Calculate the maximum power which can be transmitted by means of a belt P5 Calculate the maximum power which can be transmitted by means of a friction clutch P6 Determine the power and torque transmitted through gear trains	M2 Discuss the factors that inform the design of an industrial belt drive system		
L03 Determine the parameters of static and dynamic fluid systems			D3 Compare the practical application of three different types of differential pressure measuring device
P7 Determine the head losses in pipeline flow P8 Calculate the hydrostatic pressure and thrust on an immersed surface P9 Determine the centre of pressure on an immersed surface	M3 Explore turbulent and laminar flow in Newtonian fluids		

Pass	Merit	Distinction
LO4 Examine the principles of heat transfer in industrial applications		D4 Differentiate differences between parallel and counter flow recuperator heat exchangers
P10 Determine the heat transfer through composite walls P11 Apply heat transfer formulae to heat exchangers	M4 Explore heat losses through lagged and unlagged pipes	

Recommended resources

Textbooks

DUNN, D. (2001) *Fundamental Engineering Thermodynamics*. Longman.

EASTOP, T.D. and MCCONKEY, A. (1996) *Applied Thermodynamics for Engineering Technologists*. 5th Ed. Prentice Hall.

MASSEY, B.S. and WARD-SMITH, J. (2011) *Mechanics of Fluids*. 9th Ed. Oxford: Spon Press.

Websites

http://www.freestudy.co.uk/	FREESTUDY Tutorials on Engineering (Tutorials)
---	--

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 29: Electro, Pneumatic and Hydraulic Systems

Unit 31: Electrical Systems and Fault Finding

Unit 31: Electrical Systems and Fault Finding

Unit code A/615/1500

Unit level 4

Credit value 15

Introduction

Electrical systems can be found in a very wide range of locations such as in manufacturing facilities, airports, transport systems, shopping centres, hotels and hospitals; people will come across them every day in their work place and at home. The system must take the electrical supply from the national grid, convert it to a suitable voltage and then distribute it safely to the various system components and uses such as electric motors, lighting circuits and environmental controls.

This unit introduces students to the characteristics and operational parameters of a range of electrical system components that are used in a variety of applications; and how to fault find when they go wrong.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to follow electrical system circuit diagrams, understand the operation of the various components that make up the system and select the most suitable fault finding technique. Therefore, students will develop skills such as critical thinking, analysis, reasoning, interpretation, decision-making, information literacy, information and communication technology literacy, innovation, creativity, collaboration, and adaptability, which are crucial skills for gaining employment and developing academic competence for higher education progression.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Investigate the constructional features and applications of electrical distribution systems.
2. Examine the types and applications of electrical motors and generators.
3. Analyse the types of lighting circuits available in the industry by assessing their practical application.
4. Explain the operating characteristics of electrical safety components.

Essential Content

LO1 **Investigate the constructional features and applications of electrical distribution systems**

Operating principles:

Three-phase, single-phase distribution methods and connections

Earthing system connections

Transformer constructional features:

Construction, application, characteristics of transformers such as step up/down, isolating, shell and core, windings, connections, efficiency

Electrical circuit symbols and layout diagrams

Fault finding techniques and test equipment:

Input/output, half split

Meters, insulation testers

Typical faults found

LO2 **Examine the types and applications of electrical motors and generators**

Types and applications:

Construction, application, characteristics, and testing

Types of electric motors and generators

Practical applications

Generation methods

Starting methods

Voltages, power, speed, torque, inertia

EMI, efficiency

Cooling and protection devices

LO3 Analyse the types of lighting circuits available in the industry by assessing their practical application

Types available and applications:

Construction, application, characteristics and testing of lighting circuits

Types of lights available (high-intensity discharge lamps (HID lamps) such as metal-halide and sodium, fluorescent, light emitting diode (LED) and halogen)

Practical applications

Voltages, energy usage, lumen output, efficiency, recycling

Safety requirements for use in hazardous zones

Heat and protection devices

Lighting design:

Quality of light, control of glare, luminance, internal/external lighting for visual tasks, emergency lighting, use in hazardous environments

LO4 Explain the operating characteristics of electrical safety components

Electrical safety standards:

Approved codes of practice

Component types available and applications:

Construction, application, characteristics and testing of: distribution boards, circuit breakers, residual current devices (RCDs), fuses, thermal devices, relays, contactors, switch gear, emergency stop buttons, interlocks, disconnectors, earth connections, Insulation Protection (IP) rating

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Investigate the constructional features and applications of electrical distribution systems			D1 Examine the operation of an electrical distribution system
P1 Describe the features of an electrical distribution system P2 Review the electrical component symbols used in circuit diagrams P3 Explain the different methods of single and three-phase connections	M1 Summarise the methods of safe fault finding on an electrical distribution system		
L02 Examine the types and applications of electrical motors and generators			D2 Justify the selection of a motor for a specific industrial application
P4 Explain the types of electrical motors and generators available P5 Select suitable motors for various industrial applications P6 Review the different methods of starting induction motors and synchronous machines	M2 Outline the efficiency of motors and generators		
L03 Analyse the types of lighting circuits available in the industry by assessing their practical application			D3 Evaluate the practical application of a specific type of lighting circuit
P7 Examine the types and construction of lighting devices P8 Explore a suitable lighting type for a specific application, considering its characteristics	M3 Analyse the efficiency of lighting circuit designs		

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Explain the operating characteristics of electrical safety components		D4 Validate the selection of suitable electrical safety devices for a specific industrial application
P9 Describe the operation, types and uses of electrical safety devices P10 List suitable safety components for a specific application	M4 Determine the practical application of electrical safety devices in an industrial situation	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

HUGHES, A. (2013) *Electric Motors and Drives: Fundamentals, Types and Applications*. 4th Ed. Newnes.

Websites

https://ocw.mit.edu/	MIT open courseware Electric Machines (Tutorials)
---	---

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 19: Electrical and Electronic Principles

Unit 21: Electrical Machines

Unit 22: Electronic Circuits and Devices

Unit 32: CAD for Maintenance Engineers

Unit code F/615/1501

Unit level 4

Credit value 15

Introduction

There is a growing trend, in part due to the popularity of three-dimensional (3D) Computer Aided Design (CAD) systems, for students to generate two-dimensional (2D) drawings from three-dimensional (3D) solid models. 3D models do look impressive and whilst they clearly serve an important function in CAD design, in reality the vast majority of CAD drawings used in the industry are 2D based and, of those, a significant number are schematic drawings utilised by maintenance engineers, which cannot be produced using a 3D system.

The aim of this unit is to enable students to produce 2D CAD drawings (using industry standard CAD software), and to modify and construct electrical and mechanical drawings e.g. distribution systems, fire alarms, steam ranges, electrical and hydraulic circuits. This unit will support the development of the students' CAD abilities and build upon those skills to introduce the more advanced techniques that are used to create and modify schematic drawings quickly and efficiently. These techniques can be used to construct pre-prepared symbols for use in circuit diagrams, or be used to create unique symbols and symbol libraries.

Alongside the creation of schematic drawings utilising the block, attributes and insert commands, the students will also learn how to extract information to populate spreadsheets and databases, tabulating the information directly from the working drawing.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Create and modify CAD drawings.
2. Construct, insert and export blocks with textual attributes.
3. Produce complex schematic drawings.
4. Transfer information to external sources.

Essential content

L01 **Create and modify CAD drawings**

Introduction to the user interface:

Command line, Status Bar, panel titles and tabs

Recognise and apply absolute, relative and polar coordinates

Drafting aids:

Grid, snap, object snap, ortho and polar tracking

Draw commands:

Linetypes, circle, text, hatching, dimensioning

Modifying commands:

Copy, rotate, move, erase, scale, chamfer, fillet

Creating and defining text and dimension styles

Creating layers:

Layers/levels, colour

Viewing commands:

Zoom, pan, viewports and layouts

L02 **Construct, insert and export blocks with textual attributes**

Creating and editing blocks and write blocks

Defining, editing and managing attributes

Inserting blocks from external sources

Attribute extraction

Dynamic and nested blocks

Using the design centre and tool palettes

L03 **Produce complex schematic drawings**

Create block library and table legend, including symbols and description

Create electrical, electronic, hydraulic and pneumatic schematic drawings

L04 Transfer information to external sources

Electronic transfer of information:

Data extraction and data extraction (DXE) files

Extracting data to tables and spreadsheets

Organise and refine the extracted data

Table styles and formatting data extraction tables

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
LO1 Create and modify CAD drawings		D1 Evaluate the advantages of using template files
P1 Identify the range of drawing aids that assist productivity P2 Produce a template file to include a range of layers, dimension styles, text styles, border and title box	M1 Contrast the advantages and disadvantages of using CAD over manual drafting	
LO2 Construct, insert and export blocks with textual attributes		
P3 Create ten schematic symbols P4 Add appropriate attribute data to each of the schematic symbols and convert into blocks	M2 Identify the advantages of using blocks in a drawing	D2 LO2 & LO3 Validate how using attributes can improve productivity
LO3 Produce complex schematic drawings		
P5 Produce a block library and table legend and integrate into a template file P6 Create a complex schematic drawing using electrical/electronic or hydraulic symbols	M3 Describe the advantages of using block libraries and how they can enhance templates	
LO4 Transfer information to external sources		
P7 Extract attribute data to Excel spreadsheets P8 Explain the advantages of using data extraction (DXE) files	M4 Appraise the process for extracting drawing data to create a table	D3 Assess how electronic transfer of information can aid productivity and provide example applications

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

OMURA, G. and BENTON, B.C. (2014) *Mastering AutoCAD 2015 and AutoCAD LT 2015 Essentials*. Autodesk Official Press.

ONSTOTT, S. (2014) *AutoCAD 2015 and AutoCAD LT 2015 Essentials*. Autodesk Official Press.

Websites

<https://knowledge.autodesk.com> Autodesk Knowledge Network
(Tutorials)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: Engineering Design

Unit: 23 Computer Aided Design and Manufacture (CAD/CAM)

Unit 34: Research Project

Unit code J/615/1502

Unit type Core

Unit level 5

Credit value 30

Introduction

Completing a piece of research is an opportunity for students to showcase their intellect and talents. It integrates knowledge with different skills and abilities that may not have been assessed previously, which may include seeking out and reviewing original research papers, designing their own experimental work, solving problems as they arise, managing time, finding new ways of analysing and presenting data, and writing an extensive report. Research can always be a challenge but one that can be immensely fulfilling, an experience that goes beyond a mark or a grade, but extends into long-lasting areas of personal and professional development.

This unit introduces students to the skills necessary to deliver a complex, independently conducted research project that fits within an engineering context.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to deliver a complex and independent research project in line with the original objectives, explain the critical thinking skills associated with solving engineering problems, consider multiple perspectives in reaching a balanced and justifiable conclusion, and communicate effectively a research project's outcome. Therefore, students develop skills such as critical thinking, analysis, reasoning, interpretation, decision-making, information literacy, information and communication technology literacy, innovation, conflict resolution, creativity, collaboration, adaptability and written and oral communication.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Conduct the preliminary stages involved in the creation of an engineering research project.
2. Examine the analytical techniques used to work on all stages of the project and strategies required to overcome the challenges involved in a research project.
3. Reflect on the impact the research experience could have in enhancing personal or group performance within an engineering context.
4. Explore the communication approach used for the preparation and presentation of the research project's outcomes.

Essential Content

L01 Conduct the preliminary stages involved in the creation of an engineering research project

Setting up the research preliminaries:

Project proposal

Developing a research question(s)

Selection of project approach

Identification of project supervisor

Estimation of resource requirements, including possible sources of funding

Identification of project key objectives, goals and rationale

Development of project specification

L02 Examine the analytical techniques used to work on all stages of the project and strategies required to overcome the challenges involved in a research project

Investigative skills and project strategies:

Selecting the method(s) of collecting data

Data analysis and interpreting findings

Literature review

Engaging with technical literature

Technical depth

Multi-perspectives analysis

Independent thinking

Statement of resources required for project completion

Potential risk issues, including health and safety, environmental and commercial

Project management and key milestones

L03 Reflect on the impact the research experience could have in enhancing personal or group performance within an engineering context

Research purpose:

Detailed statement of project aims

Relevance of the research

Benefits and beneficiaries of the research

L04 Explore the communication approach used for the preparation and presentation of the research project's outcomes

Reporting the research:

Project written presentation

Preparation of a final project report

Writing research report

Project oral presentation such as using short presentation to discuss the work and conclusions

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Conduct the preliminary stages involved in the creation of an engineering research project			D1 Produce a comprehensive project proposal that evaluates and justifies the rationale for the research
P1 Produce a research project proposal that clearly defines a research question or hypothesis	P2 Discuss the key project objectives, the resulting goals and rationale	M1 Analyse the project specification and identify any project risks	
L02 Examine the analytical techniques used to work on all stages of the project and strategies required to overcome the challenges involved in a research project			D2 Critically analyse literature sources utilised, data analysis conducted and strategies to deal with challenges
P3 Conduct a literature review of published material, either in hard copy or electronically, that is relevant to your research project	P4 Examine appropriate research methods and approaches to primary and secondary research	M2 Analyse the strategies used to overcome the challenges involved in the literature review stage M3 Discuss merits, limitations and pitfalls of approaches to data collection and analysis	
L03 Reflect on the impact the research experience could have in enhancing personal or group performance within an engineering context			D3 Critically evaluate how the research experience enhances personal or group performance within an engineering context
P5 Reflect on the effectiveness and the impact the experience has had upon enhancing personal or group performance		M4 Evaluate the benefits from the findings of the research conducted	

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Explore the communications approach used for the preparation and presentation of the research project's outcomes		D4 Critically reflect how the audience for whom the research was conducted influenced the communication approach used for the preparation and presentation of the research project's outcomes
P6 Explore the different types of communications approaches that can be used to present the research outcomes P7 Communicate research outcomes in an appropriate manner for the intended audience	M5 Evaluate how the communication approach meets research project outcomes and objectives	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

LEONG, E.C., LEE-HSIA, C.H. and WEE ONG, K.K. (2015) *Guide to Research Projects for Engineering Students: Planning, Writing and Presenting*. Apple Academic Press Inc.

OBERLENDER, G.D. (2014) *Project Management for Engineering and Construction*. 3rd Ed. McGraw-Hill Education.

Websites

<https://www.apm.org.uk/> Association for Project Management
(General Reference)

Unit 35: Professional Engineering Management

Unit code	L/615/1503
Unit type	Core
Unit level	5
Credit value	15

Introduction

Engineers are professionals who can design, develop, manufacture, construct, operate and maintain the physical infrastructure and content of the world we live in. They do this by using their academic knowledge and practical experience, in a safe, effective and sustainable manner, even when faced with a high degree of technical complexity.

The aim of this unit is to continue building up on the knowledge gained in *Unit 4: Managing a Professional Engineering Project*, to provide students with the professional standards for engineers and to guide them on how to develop the range of employability skills needed by professional engineers.

Among the topics included in this unit are: engineering strategy and services delivery planning, the role of sustainability, Total Quality Management (TQM), engineering management tools, managing people and becoming a professional engineer.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to construct a coherent engineering services delivery plan to meet the requirements of a sector-specific organisation or business. They will display personal commitment to professional standards and obligations to society, the engineering profession and the environment.

This unit is assessed by a Pearson-set assignment. The project brief will be set by the centre, based on a theme provided by Pearson (this will change annually). The theme and chosen project within the theme will enable students to explore and examine a relevant and current topical aspect of professional engineering.

***Please refer to the accompanying Pearson-set Assignment Guide and the Theme Release document for further support and guidance on the delivery of the Pearson-set unit.**

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Evaluate the risk evaluation theories and practices associated with the management of projects for the production of current and developing technology.
2. Produce an engineering services delivery plan that meets the requirements of a sector-specific organisation.
3. Develop effective leadership, individual and group communication skills.
4. Develop personal commitment to professional standards and obligations to society, the engineering profession and the environment.

Essential Content

L01 Evaluate the risk evaluation theories and practices associated with the management of projects for the production of current and developing technology

The engineering business environment:

Organisational structures and functional elements

Strategic planning and deployment

Engineering strategy and services delivery planning

The role of sustainability

Total Quality Management (TQM)

Logistics and supply chain management

New product development strategies

Legal obligations and corporate responsibility

Engineering relationships:

The relationship between engineering and financial management, marketing, purchasing, quality assurance and public relations

L02 Produce an engineering services delivery plan that meets the requirements of a sector-specific organisation

Engineering management tools:

Problem analysis and decision-making, risk management, change management, performance management, product and process improvement, project management and earned value analysis

L03 Develop effective leadership, individual and group communication skills

Managing people:

Describe the most effective leadership styles

Techniques to effectively manage teams

Steps to follow for delivering effective presentations.

Meeting management skills

Communication and listening skills

Negotiating skills

Human error evaluation

Coaching and mentoring

LO4 Develop personal commitment to professional standards and obligations to society, the engineering profession and the environment

Becoming a professional engineer:

Engineering social responsibility

Importance of being active and up to date with the engineering profession, new developments and discoveries

Methods of Continuing Professional Development (CPD)

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Evaluate the risk evaluation theories and practices associated with the management of projects for the production of current and developing technology		M1 Critically evaluate the main elements and issues that impact the successful management of engineering activities	D1 Specify and analyse the challenges encountered when meeting the requirements for successfully managing engineering activities, and make justified recommendations to overcome these challenges
P1 Evaluate the risk evaluation theories and practices associated with the management of engineering projects	P2 Assess elements and issues that impact the successful management of engineering activities		
L02 Produce an engineering services delivery plan that meets the requirements of a sector-specific organisation		M2 Evaluate how each step of the delivery plan developed meets the requirements of a sector-specific organisation	D2 Critically evaluate contingencies that might prevent the delivery plan meeting the requirements of a sector-specific organisation
P3 Develop an engineering services delivery plan, applying the appropriate sector-specific requirements	P4 Determine the engineering management tools needed for designing an engineering services delivery plan		
L03 Develop effective leadership, individual and group communication skills		M3 Evaluate leadership styles and effective communication skills using specific examples in an organisational context	D3 Critically evaluate effective ways for the coaching and mentoring of disillusioned colleagues or of a poorly performing team
P6 Describe the steps for effective persuasion and negotiation	P7 Explain the steps for managing effective group meetings		
P8 Outline the steps to deliver an effective presentation			

Pass	Merit	Distinction
LO4 Develop personal commitment to professional standards and obligations to society, the engineering profession and the environment		D4 Evaluate and provide justifications on why it is necessary to be active and up to date with the engineering profession's new developments and discoveries
P9 Discuss the context of social responsibility for scientists and engineers P10 Explore the ways in which an engineer can engage in continuing professional development	M4 Summarise the engineering profession ethical standards and patterns of behaviour	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

BURNS, B. (2014) *Managing Change*. 6th Ed. Pearson.

DEARDEN, H. (2013) *Professional Engineering Practice: Reflections on the Role of the Professional Engineer*. CreateSpace Independent Publishing Platform.

KARTEN, N. (2010) *Presentation Skills for Technical Professionals*. IT Governance Ltd.

LOCK, D. (2013) *Project Management*. 10th Ed. Routledge.

Websites

<http://www.engc.org.uk/> Engineering Council
UK-SPEC UK Standard for Professional Engineering
Competence
(E-Books)

<http://www.ewb-uk.org/> Engineering without Borders
(General Reference)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 4: Managing a Professional Engineering Project

Unit 36: Advanced Mechanical Principles

Unit code	R/615/1504
Unit level	5
Credit value	15

Introduction

A mechanical engineer is required to have an advanced knowledge of most of the machinery used within the engineering industry, and should understand the physical laws that influence their operation.

The aim of this unit is to continue covering the topics discussed in *Unit 9: Mechanical Principles*. It will provide students with advanced knowledge of the mechanical theories associated with engineering applications.

Topics included in this unit are: Poisson's Ratio and typical values of common materials; the relationship between the elastic constants such as Bulk Modulus, Modulus of Elasticity, Modulus of Rigidity; the relationship between bending moment, slope and deflection in beams; calculating the slope and deflection for loaded beams using Macaulay's method; analysing the stresses in thin-walled pressure vessels; and stresses in thick-walled cylinders, flat and v-section belt drive theory.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to have more advanced knowledge of mechanical principles to determine the behavioural characteristics of materials subjected to complex loading; assess the strength of loaded beams and pressurised vessels; determine specifications of power transmission system elements; and examine operational constraints of dynamic rotating systems.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Determine the behavioural characteristics of materials subjected to complex loading.
2. Assess the strength of loaded beams and pressurised vessels.
3. Analyse the specifications of power transmission system elements.
4. Examine operational constraints of dynamic rotating systems.

Essential Content

L01 **Determine the behavioural characteristics of materials subjected to complex loading**

Characteristics of materials:

Definition of Poisson's Ratio and typical values of metals, plastics and composite materials

The relationship between the elastic constants such as Bulk Modulus, Modulus of Elasticity, Modulus of Rigidity and Poisson's Ratio

Characteristics of two-dimensional and three-dimensional loading

Calculation of volumetric strain and volume changes

L02 **Assess the strength of loaded beams and pressurised vessels**

Strength:

The relationship between bending moment, slope and deflection in beams

Calculating the slope and deflection for loaded beams using Macaulay's method

Analysing the stresses in thin-walled pressure vessels and stresses in thick-walled cylinders

L03 **Analyse the specifications of power transmission system elements**

Specifications:

Flat and v-section belt drive theory

Operation of friction clutches with uniform pressure and uniform wear theories

Principles of both epicyclic and differential gearing, and the torque required to accelerate these systems

Areas of failure when transmitting power mechanically

L04 **Examine operational constraints of dynamic rotating systems**

Operational constraints:

Design of both radial plate and cylindrical cams to meet operating specifications

Operating principles of flywheels to store mechanical energy

Balancing of rotating mass systems

The effects of coupling on freely rotating systems

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Determine the behavioural characteristics of materials subjected to complex loading			D1 Critique the behavioural characteristics of materials subjected to complex loading
P1 Discuss the relationship between the elastic constants P2 Illustrate the effects of two-dimensional and three-dimensional loading on the dimensions of a given material P3 Determine the volumetric strain and change in volume due to three-dimensional loading	M1 Assess the effects of volumetric thermal expansion and contraction on isotropic materials		
L02 Assess the strength of loaded beams and pressurised vessels			D2 Critique and justify your choice of suitable size universal beam using appropriate computer software to model the application by explaining any assumptions that could affect the selection
P4 Evaluate the variation of slope and deflection along a simply supported beam P5 Determine the principal stresses that occur in a thin-walled cylindrical pressure vessel and a pressurised thick-walled cylinder	M2 Review a suitable size universal beam from appropriate data tables which conforms to given design specifications for slope and deflection		
L03 Analyse the specifications of power transmission system elements			D3 Evaluate the conditions needed for an epicyclic gear train to become a differential, and show how a differential works in this application
P6 Discuss the initial tension requirements for the operation of a v-belt drive P7 Analyse the force requirements to engage a friction clutch in a mechanical system P8 Analyse the holding torque and power transmitted through epicyclic gear trains	M3 Critically analyse both the uniform wear and uniform pressure theories of friction clutches for their effectiveness in theoretical calculations		

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Examine operational constraints of dynamic rotating systems		D4 Critically evaluate and justify the different choices of cam follower that could be selected to achieve a specified motion, explaining the advantages and disadvantages of each application
P9 Explore the profiles of both radial plate and cylindrical cams that will achieve a specified motion P10 Show the mass of a flywheel needed to keep a machine speed within specified limits P11 Investigate the balancing masses required to obtain dynamic equilibrium in a rotating system	M4 Evaluate the effects of misalignment of shafts and the measures that are taken to prevent problems from occurring	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

BIRD, J. and ROSS, C. (2014) *Mechanical Engineering Principles*. 3rd Ed. London: Routledge.

KHURMI, R.S. and GUPTA, J.K. (2005) *Textbook of Machine Design*. New Delhi: S. Chand Publishing.

TOOLEY, M. and DINGLE, L. (2012) *Engineering Science: For Foundation Degree and Higher National*. London: Routledge.

Websites

<https://www.khanacademy.org/> Khan Academy
Physics
(Tutorials)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 8: Mechanical Principles

Unit 37: Virtual Engineering

Unit Y/615/1505

Unit level 5

Credit value 15

Introduction

The work of an engineer increasingly involves the use of powerful software modelling tools (virtual modelling). These tools allow us to predict potential manufacturing difficulties, suggest how a product or component is likely to behave in service, and undertake rapid and low cost design iteration and optimisation, to reduce costs, pre-empt failure and enhance performance.

This unit introduces students to the application of relevant Computer Aided Design (CAD) and analysis engineering tools in contemporary engineering. They will learn about standards, regulations and legal compliance within the context of engineering.

Topics included in this unit are: dimensioning and tolerances, standardisation and regulatory compliance (BS, ASTM, ISO, etc.), material properties and selection, manufacturing processes, 2D, 3D, CAD, solid modelling, one-dimensional and multi-dimensional problems, meshing and boundary conditions, and the finite volume method.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to consider how to perform computational fluid dynamics (CFD) simulations, develop finite element product and system models, explain the identification of faults in the application of simulation techniques and discuss the modelling method and data accuracy.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore the capabilities and limitations of computer-based models in meeting design fundamentals and their use in solving problems in engineering.
2. Analyse finite element product and system models in order to find and solve potential structural or performance issues.
3. Perform CFD simulations to evaluate pressure and velocity distributions within an engineering setting.
4. Determine faults in the application of simulation techniques to evaluate the modelling method and data accuracy.

Essential Content

L01 Explore the capabilities and limitations of computer-based models in meeting design fundamentals and their use in solving problems in engineering

Engineering design fundamentals:

Dimensioning and tolerances

Standardisation and regulatory compliance (BS, ASTM, ISO, etc.)

How to manufacture and what to manufacture:

Material properties and selection

Manufacturing processes: capability, cost issues and selection

Design tools:

2D and 3D CAD

Solid modelling

File types, export and compatibility

Interpretation and presentation of results through a series of guided exercises:

Results obtained, comparison of data, benefits and limitations

Generalisation of provided information, recommendations on current and future applications

L02 Analyse finite element product and system models in order to find and solve potential structural or performance issues

Finite element formulation:

One-dimensional problems

Multi-dimensional problems

Beams

Finite element method:

Define the problem: simplify an engineering problem into a problem that can be solved using FEA

Define material properties and boundary conditions; choose appropriate functions, formulate equations, solve equations, visualise and explain the results

L03 Perform CFD simulations to evaluate pressure and velocity distributions within an engineering setting

Fundamentals of CFD (Computational Fluid Dynamics):

CFD and the finite volume method background

Meshing and boundary conditions

Applications, advantages and limitations of CFD

CFD simulation and analysis:

Apply CFD to simple design/aerodynamics problems: define the problem, provide initial boundary conditions for the problem, set-up a physical model, define material properties and operating conditions

Interpretation of CFD results

Examine the solution using graphical and numerical tools; suggest and make revision of the models

L04 Determine faults in the application of simulation techniques to evaluate the modelling method and data accuracy

Simulation results:

Extracting relevant information from simulation-based exercises

Interpretation and presentation of results through a series of guided exercises

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Explore the capabilities and limitations of computer-based models in meeting design fundamentals and their use in solving problems in engineering		M1 Evaluate the capabilities and limitations of computer-based models M2 Evaluate the processes and applications used in solving problems in engineering	D1 Critically evaluate and provide supported recommendations for the application of computer-based models to an industrial environment that would improve efficiency and problem-solving
P1 Discuss the benefits and pitfalls of computer-based models used within an industrial environment to solve problems in engineering			
L02 Analyse finite element product and system models in order to find and solve potential structural or performance issues		M3 Critically analyse the finite element product and systems models that help to find and solve potential performance or structural issues for a range of practical examples	D2 For a range of practical examples, provide supported and justified recommendations for recognising and solving potential structural or performance-based issues, using finite element product and systems models
P2 Analyse the role of finite element analysis in modelling products and systems P3 Review a range of practical examples to solve potential structural or performance-based issues using finite element product and systems models			
L03 Perform CFD simulations to evaluate pressure and velocity distributions within an engineering setting		M4 Evaluate the application and limitations of CFD in an engineering context	D3 Provide supported and appropriate recommendations for improving efficiency and the generation of suitable meshes for CFD simulations
P4 Demonstrate the importance of CFD simulations applied to evaluate pressure and velocity distributions in the engineering setting P5 Complete CFD simulation to evaluate pressure and velocity distributions within an engineering setting			

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Determine faults in the application of simulation techniques to evaluate the modelling method and data accuracy		D4 Critically evaluate the appropriate application of simulation techniques that can support decision-making
P5 Determine the faults in the application of simulation techniques P6 Discuss and evaluate the modelling method and data accuracy	M5 Extract relevant information from simulation M6 Trace potential faults in the application of simulation techniques M7 Critically review results through a series of guided exercises and recommendations	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

DATE, A.W. (2005) *Introduction to Computational Fluid Dynamics*. Cambridge University Press.

FISH, J. and BELYTSCHKO, T. (2007) *A First Course in Finite Elements*. Wiley.

TREVOR, H. and BECKER, A.A. (2013) *Finite Element Analysis for Engineers*. A Primer, National Agency for Finite Element Methods & Standards.

Websites

www.tandfonline.com	Taylor & Francis Online International Journal of Computational (Journal)
http://www.inderscience.com/	Inder Science Publishers Progress in Computational Fluid Dynamics, An International Journal (Journal)
https://www.nafems.org/	NAFEMS International Journal of CFD Case Studies (Journal)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 1: Engineering Design

Unit 50: Advanced Manufacturing Technology

Unit 38: Further Thermodynamics

Unit code	D/615/1506
Unit level	5
Credit value	15

Introduction

From the refrigerators that we use in our homes to the colossal power stations that generate the electricity we use and provide power to industry, the significance that thermodynamics plays in the 21st century cannot be underestimated.

The aim of this unit is to build on the techniques explored in *Unit 13: Fundamentals of Thermodynamics and Heat Engines*, to develop further students' skills in applied thermodynamics by investigating the relationships between theory and practice.

Among the topics included in this unit are: heat pumps and refrigeration, performance of air compressors, steam power plant and gas turbines.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to determine the performance and operation of heat pumps and refrigeration systems, review the applications and efficiency of industrial compressors, use charts and/or tables to determine steam plant parameters and characteristics, describe the operation of gas turbines and assess their efficiency.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Evaluate the performance and operation of heat pumps and refrigeration systems.
2. Review the applications and efficiency of industrial compressors.
3. Determine steam plant parameters and characteristics using charts and/or tables.
4. Examine the operation of gas turbines and assess their efficiency.

Essential Content

L01 **Evaluate the performance and operation of heat pumps and refrigeration systems**

Heat pumps and refrigeration:

Reversed heat engines: reversed Carnot and Rankine cycles

Second law of thermodynamics

Refrigeration tables and charts (p-h diagrams)

Coefficient of performance of heat pumps and refrigerators

Refrigerant fluids: properties and environmental effects

Economics of heat pumps

L02 **Review the applications and efficiency of industrial compressors**

Performance of air compressors:

Theoretical and realistic cycles

Isothermal and adiabatic work

Volumetric efficiency

Intercoolers, dryers and air receivers

Hazards and faults: safety consideration and associated legislation

L03 **Determine steam plant parameters and characteristics, using charts and/or tables**

Steam power plant:

Use of tables and charts to analyse steam cycles

Circuit diagrams showing boiler, super heater, turbine, condenser and feed pump

Theoretical and actual operation: Carnot and Rankine cycle

Efficiencies and improvements

L04 **Examine the operation of gas turbines and assess their efficiency**

Gas turbines:

Single and double shaft gas turbine operation

Property diagrams: Brayton (Joule) cycle

Intercooling, reheat and regeneration

Combined heat and power plants

Self-starting and burner ignition continuation

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Evaluate the performance and operation of heat pumps and refrigeration systems			D1 Conduct a cost-benefit analysis on the installation of a ground source heat pump on a smallholding to make valid recommendations for improvements
P1 Using didactic sketches, evaluate the operating principles of both heat pumps and refrigeration systems	P2 Use refrigeration tables and pressure/enthalpy charts to determine COP, heating effect and refrigeration effect of reversed heat engines	M1 Assess the limiting factors that impact on the economics of heat pumps M2 Illustrate the contradiction between refrigeration cycles and the second law of thermodynamics	
L02 Review the applications and efficiency of industrial compressors			D2 Critically evaluate volumetric efficiency formula for a reciprocating compressor
P3 Assess the different types of industrial compressor and identify justifiable applications for each	P4 Discuss compressor faults and potential hazards P5 Determine the volumetric efficiency of a reciprocating compressor	M3 Evaluate isothermal efficiency by calculating the isothermal and polytropic work of a reciprocating compressor	
L03 Determine steam plant parameters and characteristics using charts and/or tables			D3 Critically evaluate the pragmatic modifications made to the basic Rankine cycle to improve the overall efficiency of steam generation power plants
P6 Discuss the need for superheated steam in a power generating plant P7 Apply the use of charts and/or tables to establish overall steam plant efficiencies in power systems		M4 Justify why the Rankine cycle is preferred over the Carnot cycle in steam production plants around the world	

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Examine the operation of gas turbines and assess their efficiency		D4 Critically analyse the practical solutions manufacturers offer to overcome problematic areas in gas turbines, such as burner ignition continuation and self-starting capabilities
P8 Investigate the principles of operation of a gas turbine plant P9 Assess the efficiency of a gas turbine system	M5 Compare and evaluate the actual plant and theoretical efficiencies in a single shaft gas turbine system, accounting for any discrepancies found	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

EASTOP, T.D. and MCCONKEY, A. (1996) *Applied Thermodynamics for Engineering Technologists*. 5th Ed. Prentice Hall.

EASTOP, T.D. and MCCONKEY, A. (1996) *Applied Thermodynamics for Engineering Technologists*. Student Solutions Manual. 5th Ed. Prentice Hall.

RAYNER, J. (2008) *Basic Engineering Thermodynamics*. 5th Ed. Pearson.

Websites

<http://www.freestudy.co.uk/> Free Study
(Tutorials)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 13: Fundamentals of Thermodynamics and Heat Engines

Unit 39: Further Mathematics

Unit code H/615/1507

Unit level 5

Credit value 15

Introduction

The understanding of more advanced mathematics is important within an engineering curriculum to support and broaden abilities within the applied subjects at the core of all engineering programmes. Students are introduced to additional topics that will be relevant to them as they progress to the next level of their studies, advancing their knowledge of the underpinning mathematics gained in *Unit 2: Engineering Maths*.

The unit will prepare students to analyse and model engineering situations using mathematical techniques. Among the topics included in this unit are: number theory, complex numbers, matrix theory, linear equations, numerical integration, numerical differentiation, and graphical representations of curves for estimation within an engineering context. Finally, students will expand their knowledge of calculus to discover how to model and solve engineering problems using first and second order differential equations.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to use applications of number theory in practical engineering situations, solve systems of linear equations relevant to engineering applications using matrix methods, approximate solutions of contextualised examples with graphical and numerical methods, and review models of engineering systems using ordinary differential equations.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Use applications of number theory in practical engineering situations.
2. Solve systems of linear equations relevant to engineering applications using matrix methods.
3. Approximate solutions of contextualised examples with graphical and numerical methods.
4. Review models of engineering systems using ordinary differential equations.

Essential Content

L01 Use applications of number theory in practical engineering situations

Number theory:

Bases of a number (Denary, Binary, Octal, Duodecimal, Hexadecimal) and converting between bases

Types of numbers (Natural, Integer, Rational, Real, Complex)

The modulus, argument and conjugate of complex numbers

Polar and exponential forms of complex numbers

The use of de Moivre's Theorem in engineering

Complex number applications e.g. electric circuit analysis, information and energy control systems

L02 Solve systems of linear equations relevant to engineering applications using matrix methods

Matrix methods:

Introduction to matrices and matrix notation

The process for addition, subtraction and multiplication of matrices

Introducing the determinant of a matrix and calculating the determinant for a 2x2 matrix

Using the inverse of a square matrix to solve linear equations

Gaussian elimination to solve systems of linear equations (up to 3x3)

L03 Approximate solutions of contextualised examples with graphical and numerical methods

Graphical and numerical methods:

Standard curves of common functions, including quadratic, cubic, logarithm and exponential curves

Systematic curve sketching knowing the equation of the curve

Using sketches to approximate solutions of equations

Numerical analysis using the bisection method and the Newton-Raphson method

Numerical integration using the mid-ordinate rule, the trapezium rule and Simpson's rule

LO4 Review models of engineering systems using ordinary differential equations

Differential equations:

Formation and solutions of first-order differential equations

Applications of first-order differential equations e.g. RC and RL electric circuits, Newton's laws of cooling, charge and discharge of electrical capacitors and complex stresses and strains

Formation and solutions of second-order differential equations

Applications of second-order differential equations e.g. mass-spring-damper systems, information and energy control systems, heat transfer, automatic control systems and beam theory and RLC circuits

Introduction to Laplace transforms for solving linear ordinary differential equations

Applications involving Laplace transforms such as electric circuit theory, load frequency control, harmonic vibrations of beams, and engine governors

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Use applications of number theory in practical engineering situations		M1 Deduce solutions of problems using de Moivre's Theorem	D1 Test the correctness of a trigonometric identity using de Moivre's Theorem
P1 Apply addition and multiplication methods to numbers that are expressed in different base systems	P2 Solve engineering problems using complex number theory		
P3 Perform arithmetic operations using the polar and exponential form of complex numbers			
L02 Solve systems of linear equations relevant to engineering applications using matrix methods		M2 Determine solutions to a set of linear equations using the Inverse Matrix Method	D2 Evaluate and validate all analytical matrix solutions using appropriate computer software
P4 Ascertain the determinant of a given 3x3 matrix	P5 Solve a system of three linear equations using Gaussian elimination		
L03 Approximate solutions of contextualised examples with graphical and numerical methods		M3 Solve engineering problems and formulate mathematical models using graphical and numerical integration	D3 Critique the use of numerical estimation methods, commenting on their applicability and the accuracy of the methods
P6 Estimate solutions of sketched functions using a graphical estimation method	P7 Calculate the roots of an equation using two different iterative techniques		
P8 Determine the numerical integral of engineering functions using two different methods			

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Review models of engineering systems using ordinary differential equations		D4 Critically evaluate first and second-order differential equations when generating the solutions to engineering situations using models of engineering systems
P9 Determine first order differential equations and their application to engineering systems using analytical methods P10 Determine second-order homogeneous and non-homogenous differential equations and their application to engineering systems using analytical methods P11 Calculate solutions to linear ordinary differential equations using Laplace transforms	M4 Evaluate how different models of engineering systems using first-order differential equations solve engineering problems	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

- BIRD, J. (2014) *Higher Engineering Mathematics*. 7th Ed. London: Routledge.
- SINGH, K. (2011) *Engineering Mathematics Through Applications*. Basingstoke, Palgrave Macmillan.
- STROUD, K.A. and BOOTH, D.J. (2013) *Engineering Mathematics*. 7th Ed: Basingstoke, Palgrave Macmillan.

Journals

- Communications on Pure and Applied Mathematics*. Wiley.
- Journal of Engineering Mathematics*. Springer.
- Journal of Mathematical Physics*. American Institute of Physics.

Websites

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| http://www.mathcentre.ac.uk/ | Maths Centre
(Tutorials) |
| http://www.mathtutor.ac.uk/ | Maths Tutor
(Tutorials) |

Links

- This unit links to the following related unit:
- Unit 2: Engineering Maths*

Unit 40: Commercial Programming Software

Unit code	K/615/1508
Unit level	5
Credit value	15

Introduction

The use of Computer Aided Design (CAD) and simulation in the electronic and electrical engineering industry is ever growing. Commercial software packages enable an engineer to design, simulate, model and predict the outcome of a design before a product has been made. This enables time and cost savings in the development of a product whilst enabling the engineer to further develop their design.

The aim of this unit is to introduce students to the availability and use of commercial software packages within electronics engineering, including design, simulation, simple microprocessor programming and evaluation of the tools available.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to research a range of software tools or applications to support engineering functions related to electronics, consider how a software package can be used to simulate the behaviour of an electronic circuits function, explain how to programme a microprocessor-based device to achieve a specified outcome/task, evaluate a specific electronics software tool/application, describe the types of commercial software available, compare the differences between a software simulation and a real-world circuit, and write simple commands to a microcontroller.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Research a range of software application tools to determine how they can support electronic engineering functions effectively.
2. Explain how a software package can be used to simulate the behaviour of an electronic circuit function and compare the results to real components and circuits.
3. Programme a microprocessor-based device to achieve a specified outcome or task using commercially available software.
4. Evaluate an electronics software application tool to report on its ability to replicate the real world and the resource savings this can bring to an organisation.

Essential Content

L01 Research a range of software application tools to determine how they can support electronic engineering functions effectively

Exposition of computer packages or applications:

Circuit design, simulation, testing and analysis

Printed circuit board layouts

Electronic design automation (EDA or ECAD)

Microcontroller programming, such as Programmable Intelligent Computers (PICs). Microcontroller function simulation, monitoring and testing

L02 Explain how a software package can be used to simulate the behaviour of an electronic circuit function and compare the results to real components or circuits

Application of an industrial computer-aided design package:

Simulation and analysis of electronic circuits

PCB design:

Creation of schematic netlists of a given design and transfer to a PCB layout to make design created using computer-based tools

Build:

Component identification and handling

Develop soldering skills to be able to populate a printed circuit board

Test and comparison:

Application of test equipment to measure voltage, current and resistance
Systematic test, commission and fault finding methods

Compare simulated values with tested values, comparison criteria to include; function, behaviour, accuracy, response times and errors

L03 Programme a microprocessor-based device to achieve a specified outcome or task using commercially available software

Introduction to microprocessors:

Introduction to: common languages, compilers and simulators in-circuit debugging

Simple programming for exercises:

Digital inputs, simple user feedback

Simulation and debugging

Motor, relay and sound outputs

Communication

L04 Review an electronics software application tool to report on its ability to replicate the real world and the resource savings this can bring to an organisation

Software application:

Software applications with specific industry examples incorporating ease of use, functions available, performance, reliability, quality and costs

Possible limiting factors in software systems, based on previous work undertaken in the unit

Current trends in simulation, testing and microprocessor development

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Research a range of software application tools to determine how they can support electronic engineering functions effectively			D1 Evaluate the functions and benefits of a range of commercial software used in developing electrical engineering
P1 Examine the functions of commercial programming software	P2 Discuss the categories of commercial electrical and electronic software	M1 Analyse the effectiveness of a range of commercial software in supporting electronic engineering functions	
L02 Explain how a software package can be used to simulate the behaviour of an electronic circuit function and compare the results to real components or circuits			D2 Critically evaluate the functionality of simulation in comparison to real components using a complex PCB layout
P3 Design a simple PCB layout using a software package	P4 Investigate and compare results produced in simulation to develop an analysis with the physical build	M2 Design a complex PCB layout with a good level of optimisation using a software package M3 Evaluate functionality of simulation to show considered comparisons between testing and simulation	
L03 Programme a microprocessor-based device to achieve a specified outcome or task using commercially available software			D3 Critically evaluate the functionality of simulation by noting variations between testing and simulation
P5 Programme a microprocessor-based device to produce working code using appropriate software	P6 Test and review code used through simulation and in the hardware	M4 Make improvements to given examples to produce complex working code M5 Evaluate code through simulation and in the hardware, demonstrating good competence of the software	

Pass	Merit	Distinction
LO4 Review an electronics software application tool to report on its ability to replicate the real world and the resource savings this can bring to an organisation		D4 Critically analyse current and emerging applications of commercial software with clear application to industry examples, identifying trends and recognising technical and economic factors which influence developments
P7 Evaluate an electronics software application and its ability to replicate the real world, supported by industry specific examples and illustrating the resource savings implications offered by this approach	M6 Analyse an electronics software application and its ability to replicate the real world, supported by specific industry examples and illustrating the resource savings implications this has	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

BLUM, J. (2013) *Exploring Arduino*. Wiley.

PETRUZZELLIS, T. (2005) *Build your own electronics workshop*. McGraw-Hill.

ROBBINS, A. and MILLER, W.C. (2013) *Circuit analysis: theory and practice*. 5th Ed. International Ed. Clifton Park, N.Y.: Delmar.

RICHARDSON, M. and WALLACE, S. (2013) *Getting started with Raspberry Pi*. 1st Ed. Maker Media Inc.

Websites

https://www.circuitlab.com/	Circuit Lab Online schematic editor and circuit simulator (Training)
---	--

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 23: Computer Aided Design and Manufacture (CAD/CAM)

Unit 37: Virtual Engineering

Unit 41: Distributed Control Systems

Unit 41: Distributed Control Systems

Unit code	M/615/1509
Unit level	5
Credit value	15

Introduction

With increased complexity and greater emphasis on cost control and environmental issues, the efficient control of manufacture and processing plant becomes ever more important. While small and medium scale industries require Programmable Logic Controller (PLC) and Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition (SCADA) technologies, large scale applications require Distributed Control Systems (DCS).

This unit introduces students to the applications of Distributed Control Systems in industrial measurements and control engineering, the different types of industrial networking used in control and instrumentation, the analysis of the performance of a given control system, and how to suggest appropriate solutions using a variety of possible methods.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain the impact of automated systems in modern control processes, explain the basic concepts, architecture, operation and communication of distributed control systems, identify appropriate techniques to specify and implement a simple DCS and develop programmes to use machine interfaces to monitor and control the behaviour of a complex system.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore the impact of automated systems in modern control processes.
2. Evaluate the basic concepts, architecture, operation and communication of Distributed Control Systems.
3. Suggest appropriate techniques to specify and implement a simple Distributed Control System.
4. Develop programmes to use machine interfaces to monitor and control the behaviour of a complex system.

Essential Content

L01 **Explore the impact of automated systems in modern control processes**

Modern control processes:

Introduction to computer-based control systems and typical distributed control systems

An overview of DCS and SCADA systems

Fundamentals of PLC

Comparison of DCS, SCADA and PLCs

Selection and justification of control strategies

L02 **Evaluate the basic concepts, architecture, operation and communication of Distributed Control Systems**

Distributed Control Systems:

Evolution and description of commercial DCS, DCS elements

Basic DCS controller configuration

Introduction to basic communication principles and protocol for DCS, PLC and SCADA

Hierarchical systems and distributed systems

Introduction to simulation models and packages

L03 **Suggest appropriate techniques to specify and implement a simple Distributed Control System**

Techniques:

Introduction to programmable controllers, programming of PLC and DCS systems

Operator interface

Alarm system management for DCS systems

Distributed Control System reporting

Configuration of hardware and software of PLC and DCS

Programmable controller interfacing and troubleshooting

Configuration of a typical DCS control using typical plant problems

L04 Develop programmes to use machine interfaces to monitor and control the behaviour of a complex system

Behaviours:

Computation of control systems

Control and supervision of Distributed Control Systems

Human Machine Interfaces (HMIs) and alarms

Network communication standards

Application of field interfaces and networks

Application of diagnostic and maintenance consideration

Project implementation phases and life cycle

Overview of future trends (e.g. digital control, intelligent systems and virtual instruments)

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
LO1 Explore the impact of automated systems in modern control processes			D1 Critically evaluate and justify the selection of the control strategies and their function against the specifications of a DCS
P1 Discuss the application of DCS, SCADA and PLC, and their respective fields of application P2 Investigate the component parts and their respective functions, in a modern control process P3 Review the main building blocks (layout), communication paths and signal level(s) of a DCS	M1 Evaluate the use of DCS from field devices to commercial data processing M2 Illustrate the control modes, structures, and diagnostic methods used in controllers		
LO2 Evaluate the basic concepts, architecture, operation and communication of Distributed Control Systems			D2 Critically evaluate the performance of the operator interface in a DCS and its associated hardware
P4 Evaluate the concept, architecture, operation and communication of DCS, SCADA and PLC in their respective applications P5 Review the hierarchical systems in DCS P6 Assess the use of Local Area Network, field bus types, and protocols	M3 Critique the input-output interface, fieldbus protocols and physical layers of a distributed control system M4 Critically examine the application of local area network communication and network types to distributed control systems		
LO3 Suggest appropriate techniques to specify and implement a simple Distributed Control System			D3 Analyse the interfacing, structure, and performance of a good alarm system
P7 Review the application and implementation of the DCS systems P8 Determine appropriate techniques for the application of DCS in different environments P9 Design and implement a simple DCS to satisfy predefined parameters	M5 Develop a high level programme for a typical plant problem M6 Explore the hardware and software configuration of a typical plant problem, making use of various operator display configurations		

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Develop programmes to use machine interfaces to monitor and control the behaviour of a complex system		D4 Analyse and justify the choice of hardware, software and communication systems and its strategy in terms of architecture, system requirements, system integration and toolkits available
P10 Explain the importance of the control principles and supervision of a DCS P11 Apply HMI to different process control applications and understand the alarm reporting P12 Demonstrate the role of the operator interface, associated hardware, diagnostics and maintenance for a DCS	M7 Show how the configuration control procedures ensure data integrity M8 Explore the requirements for in-built diagnostics and maintenance diagnostic routines	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

BAILEY, D. and WRIGHT, E. (2003) *Practical SCADA for Industry*. Newnes.

BOYER, S. (2004) *SCADA-Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition System*. 3rd Ed. The Automation Systems and Automation Society (ISA) publication.

SHARMA, K. (2011) *Overview of Industrial Process Automation*. Elsevier.

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 40: Commercial Programming Software

Unit 54: Further Control Systems Engineering

Unit 42: Further Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs)

Unit code	H/615/1510
Unit level	5
Credit value	15

Introduction

Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs) were invented by the American Richard ('Dick') Morley in 1969, to be used in the manufacture of cars. Prior to that date production lines had been controlled by a mass of hard-wired relays. Using programmable devices in their place meant that changes in production could be implemented much faster without the need to rewire control circuits.

The aim of this unit is to further develop students' skills in the use of PLCs and their specific applications within engineering and manufacturing. Among the topics included in this unit are: device interface methods, PLC signal processing and communications with other devices, PLC programming methodology and alternative programmable control devices.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to research the design, selection and use of PLCs as part of a larger system, programme a PLC to solve an industrial process problem for a given application and illustrate the alternative strategies for using other available types of programmable control devices.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Discuss the selection of a specific PLC for a given industrial application.
2. Evaluate how PLCs exchange information and process signals with other devices.
3. Design a PLC programme to solve an industrial process problem for a given application.
4. Analyse alternative strategies using other types of programmable control devices in industrial applications.

Essential Content

L01 Discuss the selection of a specific PLC for a given industrial application

PLC selection:

Common PLC industrial applications

Different PLC types, their features and PLC manufacturers

External input and output devices: analogue and digital

PLC operational characteristics: speed, current, voltages, memory

Alternative PLC modules available: Relay, Triac, Transistor, Analogue to Digital

L02 Evaluate how PLCs exchange information and process signals with other devices

PLC signal processing and communications with other devices:

Communication links and standards

Networked bus systems

Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition (SCADA) systems and Human Machine Interfaces (HMIs)

L03 Design a PLC programme to solve an industrial process problem for a given application

PLC programming methodology:

Fundamentals of logic–ladder diagrams and other programming structures

PLC programming methods used of PLCs in accordance with IEC 61131

Logic functions: AND, OR, NOT, EXOR

Number systems used by PLCs: Binary, Hexadecimal, Octal, BCD

System input and output allocation data

Advanced functions: registers, Analogue to Digital (AtoD), performing calculations, high-speed counters and timers

Program test and debug software functions

Fault-finding of systems using PLC software remotely

Software toolbox elements

Virtual PLC simulations

L04 Analyse alternative strategies for using other types of programmable control devices in industrial applications

Alternative programmable control devices:

Programmable Logic Device (PLD)

Peripheral Interface Controller (PIC)

Microcontrollers

Industrial computers

Programmable device interface methods:

Relays and solid state relays

Opto couplers

Opto isolators

Motor driver interface integrated circuits

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Discuss the selection of a specific PLC for a given industrial application		M1 Justify the choice of a specific PLC suitable for a given industrial application	D1 Evaluate and justify the selection of a specific PLC for an industrial application
P1 Investigate the key characteristics of a given industrial application	P2 Compare the operational features and characteristics of PLCs from several manufacturers		
L02 Evaluate how PLCs exchange information and process signals with other devices		M2 Show how PLCs in industry integrate with HMIs and SCADA M3 Evaluate the use of SCADA and HMIs in industry	D2 Provide justified and valid rationale for the convergence of PLCs/HMIs and SCADA control systems
P3 Illustrate the main differences between communication links and standards used within PLC systems	P4 Review the advantages of using networked bus PLC systems		
L03 Design a PLC programme to solve an industrial process problem for a given application		M3 Demonstrate the use of test and debug software to correct PLC program faults M4 Explore the practical uses of PLC advanced functions	D3 Critically evaluate a PLC programme used to solve an industrial application problem
P5 Design a PLC programme to solve an industrial application problem	P6 Demonstrate the use of PLC programming and simulation software in a given application		

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Analyse alternative strategies for using other types of programmable control devices in industrial applications		D4 Critically evaluate the selection of an alternative programmable device in a given application
P7 Review the different types of programmable control devices available P8 Examine an industrial application to determine the required characteristics of a control device	M5 Review the problems faced by using alternative devices in an industrial environment	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

BOLTON, W. (2015) *Programmable Logic Controllers*. 5th Ed. Newnes.

KAMEL, K. and KAMEL, E. (2013) *Programmable Logic Controllers: Industrial Control*. McGraw-Hill Education.

MORTON, J. (2005) *The PIC Microcontroller: Your Personal Introductory Course*. 3rd Ed. Newnes.

PEREZ, E. (2012) *Introduction to PLCs: A beginner's guide to Programmable Logic Controllers*. Elvin Perez Adrover.

Websites

www.seipub.org/ Science and Engineering Publishing Company
International Journal of Information and Computer
Science
(Journal)

<http://www.airccse.org/> AIRCC Publishing Corporation
International Journal of Computer Science, Engineering
and Information Technology
(IJCEIT) (Journal)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 15: Automation, Robotics and Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs)

Unit 6: Mechatronics

Unit 40: Commercial Programme Software

Unit 43: Further Electrical Machines and Drives

Unit code	K/615/1511
Unit level	5
Credit value	15

Introduction

Electric machines are the most common devices used to perform the actuator function in an industrial control loop. They are an indispensable part of engineering processes and are the workhorse in both commercial and industrial applications.

The aim of this unit is to continue developing the skills in the use and application of electrical machines, particularly direct current (DC) and alternating current (AC) drives.

Among the topics included in this unit are: an introduction to electrical machines and drives, and their characteristics, starting and braking, loading conditions, ratings, and their control.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain the operation of different motors used in industry, describe the different types of industrial drives used in various disciplines, assess the importance of electrical machines and their drives for a given industrial application, analyse their performances and suggest appropriate solutions using a variety of possible methods.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore the principles of operation and the characteristics of electrical machines and their industrial applications.
2. Illustrate the fundamentals of power electronics converters used in power processing units for electric drives.
3. Demonstrate the fundamentals of DC drives and their industrial applications.
4. Demonstrate the fundamentals of AC drives and their industrial applications.

Essential Content

L01 **Explore the principles of operation and the characteristics of electrical machines and their industrial applications**

Principles of operation and characteristics of electrical machines and their industrial applications:

Introduction to electrical machines, concepts of electrical machines and their classification

Principles of operation of DC machines and their characteristics

Principles of operation of three-phase induction machines and their characteristics

Principles of operation of synchronous machines and their characteristics

Introduction to special machines

Simulation using Matlab/Simulink or similar commercially available software

L02 **Examine the fundamentals of power electronics converters used in power processing units for electric drives**

Fundamentals of power electronics converters used in power processing units for electric drives:

Concepts of electrical drives and their classification

DC to DC converters (Choppers), AC to DC converters (Rectifiers), DC to AC converters (Inverters), AC to AC converters (Cyclo-converters)

Simulation using Matlab/Simulink or similar commercially available software

L03 **Demonstrate the fundamentals of DC drives and their industrial applications**

Fundamentals of DC drives and their industrial applications:

Introduction to DC drives and their application to emerging areas such as smart grid and renewable energy sources

Operating modes of DC drives; single-phase drives, three-phase drives, chopper drives, two/four quadrant operation drives

Application; closed loop control of DC drives

Simulation using Matlab/Simulink or similar commercially available software

L04 Demonstrate the fundamentals of AC drives and their industrial applications

Fundamentals of AC drives and their industrial applications:

Introduction to AC drives and their industrial application such as smart grid and renewable energy sources

Induction motor drives: voltage controls, frequency controls, current controls, voltage, current and frequency control, and closed loop control induction motor

Synchronous motor drives: frequency control and closed loop control of synchronous motor drives

Simulation using Matlab/Simulink or similar commercially available software

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Explore the principles of operation and the characteristics of electrical machines and their industrial applications			D1 Critically evaluate the performance of a given electrical machine using Matlab/Simulink or similar commercially available software to corroborate its performance or otherwise
P1 Discuss the different types of electrical machines and cite their industrial applications P2 Illustrate the principle of operation of electrical machines with the aid of circuit diagrams and waveforms P3 Investigate the construction, operation and characteristics of a given electrical machine	M1 Utilise Matlab and Simulink or similar commercially available software for modelling and simulation of a given electrical machine M2 Analyse the characteristics of a given electrical machine from its equivalent circuits		
L02 Examine the fundamentals of power electronics converters used in power processing units for electric drives			D2 Critically evaluate the performance of a given converter using Matlab/Simulink software to corroborate its performance or otherwise
P4 Illustrate, with the aid of circuit diagrams and waveforms, the operation of a given uncontrolled or controlled converter (half wave/full wave/three-phase) P5 Illustrate, with the aid of circuit diagrams and waveforms, the impact of resistive and inductive loads on the converter's input and output characteristics P6 Investigate the importance of input and output filters in a given converter	M3 Show how Matlab and Simulink or similar commercially available software may be used for modelling and simulation of a given converter M4 Evaluate the key performance characteristics of a given converter		

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L03 Demonstrate the fundamentals of DC drives and their industrial applications		D3 Analyse the impact of DC drives on the operation and performance of an industrial control system
P7 Discuss the operating modes of DC drives and control parameters P8 Explain the importance of DC drives in industrial applications P9 Discuss the principle operations of single/three-phase choppers with the aid of circuit diagrams and waveforms P10 Illustrate, with the aid of circuit diagrams and waveforms, the implementation of closed loop control of DC drives	M5 Develop an open loop block diagram of a DC motor and derive the relationship between the input and the output of the systems M6 Evaluate how DC drive circuits are used to control the speed of DC motors	
L04 Demonstrate the fundamentals of AC drives and their industrial applications		D4 Analyse the impact of AC drives on the operation and performance of an industrial control system
P11 Illustrate the operating modes of AC drives, their control parameters and their importance in industrial applications P12 Illustrate, with the aid of circuit diagrams and waveforms, the principles of operations of single/three-phase AC drives P13 Review, with the aid of circuit diagrams and waveforms, the implementation of closed loop control of AC drives	M7 Develop an open loop block diagram of an induction motor and derive the relationship between the input and the output of the systems M8 Evaluate how AC drive circuits are used to control the speed of induction and synchronous motors	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

HUGHES, A. (2013) *Electric Motors and Drives: Fundamentals, Types and Applications*. 4th Ed. Newnes.

RASHID, M.H. (2004) *Circuits, Devices and Applications*. 3rd Ed. Prentice Hall.

RASHID, M.H. (2001) *Power Electronics Handbooks*. 1st Ed. Academic Press.

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 21: Electrical Machines

Unit 44: Industrial Power, Electronics and Storage

Unit code	M/615/1512
Unit level	5
Credit value	15

Introduction

This unit presents a wide-ranging introduction to the field of existing and renewable energy systems. There are many alternative sources of energy (some 'green') which can be converted to an electrical form, providing energy for transport, heat/cooling and lighting, as well as energy for various industrial processes and applications.

Power electronic converters are an essential component of renewable and distributed energy sources, including wind turbines, photovoltaics, marine energy systems and energy storage systems. It is necessary to gain a clear understanding of, and be able to examine, the technical implications of providing sustainable electrical energy to meet the energy demand of the future.

The unit will also explore the potential impacts of climate change and why more, and different forms of, sustainable energy sources are required together with the need for energy efficiency measures.

By the end of this unit students will be able to examine the technological concepts behind providing a sustainable electrical energy supply for the future. They will also be able to describe how the fundamental technical and economic processes and drivers at play in the electrical power industry affect the selection and use of energy sources.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Evaluate energy demand to determine the technology and methods of energy production.
2. Discuss current energy efficiency measures, technologies and policies specific to the building and transportation sectors.
3. Analyse the control techniques of power electronics for renewable energy systems.
4. Investigate the impacts of renewable resources to the grid and the various issues associated with integrating such resources to the grid.

Essential Content

L01 **Evaluate the energy demand to determine the technology and methods of energy production**

Energy demand:

Historical energy production, energy consumption, environmental aspects and global warming

The need for energy systems and global energy demand over the short to long term

Environmental effects associated with energy generation and consumption

Practicality, benefits, drawbacks and effectiveness of renewable energy sources

Overview of renewable energy technologies (wind, solar, bio, hydro, geothermal) and the associated costs

Future energy trends, scenarios and sustainable energy sources

L02 **Explore current energy efficiency measures, technologies and policies specific to the building and transportation sectors**

Energy auditing, management, costs, requirements, bench marking and optimisation:

Energy management, planning, monitoring, policy, ecology and environment

Energy and buildings:

Overview of the significance of energy use and energy processes

Internal and external factors on energy use and the attributes of the factors

Status of energy use in buildings and estimation of energy use in a building

Standards for thermal performance of building envelope and evaluation of the overall thermal transfer

Measures and technologies to improve energy efficiency in buildings

Energy and electric vehicles:

Electrical vehicle configurations, requirements, and circuit topology; electric and plug in hybrid vehicles

Policies, measures and technologies to support more sustainable transportation

Use of Matlab/Simulink or alternative appropriate software to model, simulate and analyse the energy efficiency of a typical standard house or electric vehicle

L03 Analyse the control techniques of power electronics for renewable energy systems

Control techniques:

Environmental aspects of electrical energy conversion using power electronics

Introduce design criteria of power converters for renewable energy applications

Analyse and comprehend the various operating modes of wind electrical generators and solar energy systems

Introduce the industrial application of power converters, namely AC to DC, DC to DC and AC to AC converters for renewable energy systems

Explain the recent advancements in power systems using the power electronic systems. Introduction to basic analysis and operation techniques on power electronic systems

Functional analysis of power converters' main topologies

Use of Matlab/Simulink to model, simulate and analyse the dynamic behaviour of a simple renewable energy system

L04 Investigate the impacts of renewable resources to the grid and the various issues associated with integrating such resources to the grid

Impact of renewable resources:

Safe and secure operation of a simple power system

Standalone and grid connected renewable energy systems

Introduction to smart grid, features, functions, architectures, and distributed generation. Grid interactive systems, grid tied systems, inverters, and application of its devices

Smart homes, power management, smart grid, intelligent metering

Communication technologies and power electronics modules for smart grid network, importance of power electronics in smart grid, for example energy storage (electrical, chemical, biological, and heat), and the future of smart grid

Use of Matlab/Simulink to model, simulate and analyse the dynamic behaviour of a standard smart grid

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Evaluate the energy demand to determine the technology and methods of energy production			D1 Critically evaluate the performance of a renewable energy system and the technologies used in energy efficiency improvement
P1 Investigate current energy sources, demand and their impact on the environment P2 Examine the benefits and effectiveness of renewable energy sources P3 Explore renewable energy technologies and their costs	M1 Determine the use of energy sources to assess their global impact on energy demand M2 Evaluate the effectiveness and drawbacks of renewable energy systems for short and long term energy demands		
L02 Explore current energy efficiency measures, technologies and policies specific to the building and transportation sectors			D2 Analyse the dynamic performance of a power electronic converter for a given renewable energy source and calculate the energy and cost savings against conventional power sources, including consideration for development and installation costs
P4 Discuss current energy efficiency measures P5 Determine the main factors that impact on energy use and efficiency in a building P6 Discuss the technologies that could be used to support more sustainable transport	M3 Apply modelling of energy management in a building or electric vehicle using Matlab/Simulink (or equivalent) M4 Evaluate the selection of suitable technologies to improve energy efficiency in a building or electric vehicle		

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L03 Analyse the control techniques of power electronics for renewable energy systems			D3 Critically evaluate the dynamic performance of integrating renewable energy sources to the smart grid network using a standard industrial based software, such as Matlab/Simulink software (or equivalent)
P7 Analyse the applications of power electronics in renewable energy applications P8 Determine the industrial application of power electronic converters P9 Analyse the power electronic converter topologies and their principles of operation	M5 Simulate a simple power converter for a typical renewable energy system using a standard software package such as Matlab/Simulink (or equivalent) M6 Critically analyse the use of the power converter selected above for a renewable energy application		
L04 Investigate the impacts of renewable resources to the grid and the various issues associated with integrating such resources to the grid			D4 Critically analyse the impact of renewable energy sources and their integration to the grid using a standard industrial based software such as Matlab/Simulink (or equivalent)
P10 Investigate the safe operation of a smart power system P11 Investigate the principle of operation of standalone and grid connected renewable energy systems P12 Discuss the features of a smart grid network P13 Determine the importance of power electronics in smart grid and energy storage	M7 Analyse how power electronic converters are used in smart grid networks M8 Evaluate the issues associated with integrating renewable energy sources to the grid		

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

ABU-RUB, H., MALINOWSKI, M. and AL-HADDAD, K. (2014) *Power Electronics for Renewable Energy Systems, Transportation and Industrial Applications*. John Wiley & Sons.

EKANAYAKE, J. and JENKINS, N. (2012) *Smart Grid Technology and Applications*. John Wiley & Sons.

RASHID, M.H. (2013) *Power Electronics: Circuits, Devices and Applications*. 4th Ed. Pearson.

TWIDELL, J. and WEIR, T. (2006) *Renewable Energy Resources*. 2nd Ed. Taylor & Francis.

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 51: Sustainability

Unit 53: Utilisation of Electrical Power

Unit 45: Industrial Systems

Unit code T/615/1513

Unit level 5

Credit value 15

Introduction

The speed and efficiency of many industrial processes is due, largely, to the control systems selected for the application and the engineer's ability to apply the most appropriate technology for their operation.

This unit presents a structured approach to the development of advanced electronic solutions in a range of industrial situations. An essential requirement here is the engineer's ability to utilise the most appropriate technology for each application, to ensure the most efficient monitoring and control of variables such as pressure, temperature and speed.

Among the topics included in this unit are techniques and applications of electrical and electronic engineering, as they apply to various branches of industry, such as component handling, controlling the speed or torque of a motor or responding to change of circumstances in a process.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to describe system elements and consider their overall characteristics. This provides opportunity for analytically assessing the accuracy and repeatability of electronic instruments.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Describe the main elements of an electronically controlled industrial system.
2. Identify and specify the interface requirements between electronic, electrical and mechanical transducers and controllers.
3. Apply practical and computer-based methods to design and test a measurement system.
4. Apply appropriate analytical techniques to predict the performance of a given system.

Essential Content

L01 **Describe the main elements of an electronically controlled industrial system**

Fundamental concepts of industrial systems:

Discrete control

Input and output devices; open and closed loop systems

Describe the system elements and the principles and applications of important and representative AC and DC motors

L02 **Identify and specify the interface requirements between electronic, electrical and mechanical transducers and controllers**

Interfacing and transducers:

Discrete automation using relays and solenoids, AC and DC motors, pneumatic, hydraulic and electrical actuators, and other transducers and devices for measuring and comparing physical parameters

Interfacing between electrical, electronic and mechanical transducers

Practical measurement using sensors and transducers, process actuators for temperature and pressure control

L03 **Apply practical and computer-based methods to design and test a measurement system**

System modelling and analysis:

The use of transfer functions to help predict the behaviour and constancy of an industrial process, including accuracy, resolution and tolerances, repeatability and stability, sensitivity and response time

Dealing with error and uncertainty in industrial systems

Use of computer packages in measurement and control, and dealing with uncertainty and errors in systems

L04 **Apply appropriate analytical techniques to predict the performance of a given system**

Consideration of current trends in technology, including the future of industrial systems, the impact of digital developments, the increase of wireless and remote control and the Internet of Things

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Describe the main elements of an electronically controlled industrial system			D1 Critically examine the performance of an electronically controlled system to make recommendations for improvement
P1 Describe the main elements of an electronically controlled industrial system	P2 Review the main concepts underlying electronically controlled industrial systems	M1 Analyse the characteristics of an electronically controlled industrial system by applying a variety of techniques to the solution of a given problem	
L02 Identify and specify the interface requirements between electronic, electrical and mechanical transducers and controllers			D2 Critically investigate the behaviour of a given control system to compare different electrical, electronic, and mechanical approaches to control
P3 Identify the interface requirements between electronic, electrical and mechanical transducers and controllers	P4 Justify the choice of transducers and controllers for a given task	M2 Predict the behaviour of an electronically controlled industrial system by applying a variety of transducers to the solution of a given problem and choose a 'best' solution	
L03 Apply practical and computer-based methods to design and test a measurement system			D3 Critically evaluate the performance of an ideal measurement system compared to a real circuit
P5 Apply practical and computer-based methods to design and test a measurement system	P6 Explain the use of practical and analytical methods in creating and testing a measurement system	M3 Interpret the characteristics and behaviour of an existing electronic measurement system by applying a variety of methods to find a solution to a given problem	

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Apply appropriate analytical techniques to predict the performance of a given system		D4 Analyse an existing industrial system by using appropriate analytical techniques Provide justified recommendations to improve the performance
P7 Apply the main analytical techniques to explain the performance of a given system	M4 Evaluate the characteristics of an electronically controlled industrial system by applying a variety of analytical techniques to the solution of a given problem	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

- BIRD, J. (2013) *Electrical Circuit Theory and Technology*. Routledge.
- HUGHES, E. et al. (2012) *Electrical and Electronic Technology*. Pearson.
- REHG, J.A. and SARTORI, G.J. (2005) *Industrial Electronics*. Prentice-Hall.
- WILAMOWSKI, B.M. and IRWIN, J.D. (2011) *The Industrial Electronic Handbook: Fundamentals of Industrial Electronics*. CRC Press.

Websites

- | | |
|---|---|
| http://www.bath.ac.uk/ | University of Bath
Patents
(General Reference) |
| http://www.bsigroup.com/ | Business Standards Institution
Standards Catalogue
(General Reference) |
| https://www.ieee.org/ | Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers
Standards
(General Reference) |
| http://www.theiet.org/ | Institution of Engineering and Technology
(General Reference) |
| http://www.newelectronics.co.uk/ | New Electronics
Digital Magazine
(Journals) |
| http://www.theiet.org/ | Institution of Engineering and Technology
(Journals) |
| http://www.epemag.com/ | Everyday Practical Electronics
(Journals) |
| https://www.ieee.org/ | Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers
(Journals) |

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 19: Electrical and Electronic Principles

Unit 16: Instrumentation and Control Systems

Unit 46: Embedded Systems

Unit code A/615/1514

Unit level 5

Credit value 15

Introduction

An embedded system is a device or product which contains one or more tiny computers hidden inside it. This 'hidden computer', usually a microcontroller, is used to control the device and give it added 'intelligence'. Embedded systems are a key aspect of modern engineering and are applied in areas as diverse as automotive, medical, and industrial, and in the home and office. In many cases, embedded systems are linked together in networks. Embedded systems are the basis of a new wave of engineering design and practice, notably in machine-to-machine communication and in the Internet of Things.

This unit builds on introductory knowledge students have already gained in electronic circuits. It develops their knowledge of computer hardware, focussing on the small, low-cost type of computer (i.e. a *microcontroller*), usually used in embedded systems. It then develops skill in devising circuits which operate external to the microcontroller and interface with it; generally, these relate to sensors, actuators, human interface or data transfer. In parallel with this, students will be developing programming skills, writing programmes which download straight to the microcontroller and cause it to interact with its external circuit. Students will also explore the wider context of embedded systems, learning how they are applied in 'hi-tech' applications, in many cases revolutionising our ability to undertake certain activities.

Unit assessment will require the design, development, construction and commissioning of an embedded system, meeting a given design brief; this will develop skills which are in much demand in industry. A written assignment, exploring one or more of the many fast-moving embedded system applications in use today, will also be completed.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore the principle features of a microcontroller and explain the purpose of its constituent parts.
2. Design and implement simple external circuitry, interfacing with a given microcontroller.
3. Write well-structured code in an appropriate programming language, to simulate, test and debug it.
4. Evaluate the applications of embedded systems in the wider environment, including in networked systems.

Essential Content

L01 **Explore the principle features of a microcontroller and explain the purpose of its constituent parts**

Microcontroller architecture:

CPU (Central Processing Unit), the instruction set, programme memory, data memory, input/output (I/O), data and address buses, von Neumann and Harvard structures

Peripherals, to include digital I/O, counter/timers, analogue to digital converter (ADC), pulse width modulation (PWM), Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI), Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART)

Memory types (overview only): Flash, Static RAM (Random Access Memory), EEPROM (Electrically Erasable Read Only Memory) and their applications

Simple interrupt concepts

L02 **Design and implement simple external circuitry, interfacing with a given microcontroller**

Simple digital interfacing:

Switches, light emitting diodes (LEDs), keypads, and 7-segment displays

DC and ADC applications:

DC load switching (e.g. of small motor or solenoid), use of PWM to provide variable DC motor speed control

ADC application, including range and resolution

Signal conditioning for analogue inputs, including simple op amp circuits to provide gain or level shifting

Interfacing to external devices with serial capability, applying SPI and UART

Power supply and clock oscillator

L03 **Write well-structured code in an appropriate programming language, to simulate, test and debug it**

The development cycle:

Integrated Development Environment, Assembler and High Level Languages, compilers, simulators, completing an in-circuit debug

Devising a code structure e.g. using flow diagrams and pseudo code

Programming languages and codes:

Review of an appropriate high level programming language (which is likely to be C). Language structure, data types, programme flow, looping, branching, and conditional

Developing application code: initialisation, data input, conditional branching and looping, data output

Code simulation, download, test and debug

L04 Evaluate the applications of embedded systems in the wider environment, including in networked systems

Review of application of embedded systems:

Using example sectors e.g. motor vehicle, smart buildings, medical, office, wearable. Review possible limiting factors in an embedded design e.g. power supply, reliability, security

Review of current trends in embedded systems, including the Internet of Things and machine-to-machine

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Explore the principle features of a microcontroller and explain the purpose of its constituent parts			D1 Critically evaluate microcontroller architectures and subsystems, exploring characteristics such as electrical, timing and size (e.g. of memory or ALU)
P1 Examine the hardware interfaces and the software architecture of a selected microcontroller	P2 Explain the function of the main microcontroller elements	M1 Evaluate microcontroller architectures and subsystems, exploring characteristics such as electrical, timing and size (e.g. of memory or ALU)	
L02 Design and implement simple external circuitry, interfacing with a given microcontroller			D2 Critically evaluate the functionality of external circuitry under a range of operating conditions
P3 Design simple external circuits, sensors and actuators, from available designs	P4 Apply simple external circuits, demonstrating effective interfacing and adequate functionality	M2 Adapt and improve simple external circuits, sensors and actuators, from available designs M3 Assess simple external circuits and evaluate functionality	
L03 Write well-structured code in an appropriate programming language, to simulate, test and debug it			D3 Critically evaluate the code developed through simulation and in the hardware, demonstrating excellent functionality
P5 Write well-structured working code, to meet an identified need	P6 Test and de-bug code through simulation in the hardware, demonstrating functionality	M4 Adapt and improve given examples to produce well-structured and reliable code with meaningful programme identifiers, to meet an identified need	
L04 Evaluate the applications of embedded systems in the wider environment, including in networked systems			D4 Critically evaluate emerging applications of embedded systems, clearly identifying trends and recognising technical and economic factors
P7 Explain the uses of embedded systems in current and emerging applications		M5 Evaluate current and emerging applications of embedded systems, e.g. in motor vehicles, health or the Internet of Things	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

BLUM, J. (2013) *Exploring Arduino*. Wiley.

TOULSON, R. and WILMSHURST, T. (2012) *Fast and Effective Embedded System Design: Applying the ARM*. Newnes.

WILMSHURST, T. (2009) *Designing Embedded Systems with PIC Microcontrollers: Principles and Applications*. 2nd Ed. Newnes.

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 52: Further Electrical, Electronic and Digital Principles

Unit 54: Further Control Systems Engineering

Unit 47: Analogue Electronic Systems

Unit code F/615/1515

Unit level 5

Credit value 15

Introduction

Analogue electronic systems are still widely used for a variety of very important applications and this unit explores some of the specialist applications of this technology.

The aim of this unit is to further develop students' understanding of the application of analogue and digital devices in the design of electronic circuits. Students will investigate the design and testing of electronic systems based on a sound theoretical knowledge of the characteristics of electronic devices supported by Electronic Computer Aided Design (ECAD) tools, and then construct and test sample physical circuits. Students will be able to explain the characteristics of analogue and digital subsystems and the representation and processing of information within them.

Upon completion of this unit students will be aware of techniques employed in the design and evaluation of analogue and digital subsystems used in the development of complete electronic systems.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Design single stage analogue amplifier circuits to predict and measure, by simulation, the gain, frequency response and input and output resistances.
2. Develop functional subsystems through an understanding of the characteristics of operational amplifiers.
3. Examine the characteristics of information represented in analogue and digital format to assess techniques for the conversion of signals between analogue and digital formats.
4. Design electronic circuits using physical components.

Essential Content

L01 **Design single stage analogue amplifier circuits to predict and measure, by simulation, the gain, frequency response and input and output resistances**

Bipolar Junction Transistor models:

The theory of operation of the Bipolar Junction Transistor (BJT), together with DC biasing conditions of BJT for linear amplifier applications

Characteristics of common emitter, common collector and common base amplifier configurations

DC h_{FE} and small signal common emitter h-parameter model and the common emitter hybrid- π model of the BJT

Show $g_m \approx I_C/26\text{mV}$ for silicon BJT at room temperature

Bipolar Junction Transistor small signal amplifiers:

Four-resistor BJT common-emitter amplifier and its predicted AC voltage gain

ECAD used to determine the mid-band voltage gain and input and output resistances

The effect of input, output and emitter decoupling capacitors and tuned L-C collector load

Bipolar Junction Transistor large signal amplifiers:

Examples of class A, B, AB, C and D large signal amplifiers

Use of ECAD to investigate the characteristics of sample power amplifier circuits

Field Effect Transistor models:

The theory of operation of the Field Effect Transistor (FET) and the Metal Oxide Semiconductor FET (MOSFET)

Application of FETs and MOSFETs in switching circuits and linear amplifiers, including complementary MOSFET stages

Apply FET AC equivalent circuit models

Examples of specific applications of FET that have been developed for specialist applications

L02 Develop functional subsystems through an understanding of the characteristics of operational amplifiers

Operational amplifier components:

Circuit configuration and the operation of the long-tailed pair differential amplifier, current mirror and class AB amplifiers and relate these to circuits of operational amplifiers published in manufacturers' data sheets

Operational amplifier characteristics:

Characteristics of practical operational amplifiers, including open loop gain, input offset voltage, common mode input range, saturated output levels, slew rate and gain-bandwidth product

Describe the ideal operational amplifier model and relate these to the specifications of practical operational amplifiers

Characteristics of the operational amplifier with negative feedback applied

Operational amplifier applications:

Description of a range of subsystems, including the voltage comparator, inverting and non-inverting amplifier, summing amplifier, differential amplifier, linear voltage regulator, switched mode voltage regulator, differentiator, integrator, filters, sinusoidal oscillator, Schmitt trigger and Schmitt oscillator

Sub-system specifications and evaluations in time and frequency domains, as appropriate

Use of ECAD tools

L03 Examine the characteristics of information represented in analogue and digital format to assess techniques for the conversion of signals between analogue and digital formats

The characteristics of information represented electronically:

Comparison of the implications of capturing, processing and storing information represented by analogue signals and by digital data, including amplitude range, frequency range, accuracy, resolution, linearity, drift, noise and signal-to-noise ratio

Digital to analogue and analogue to digital converters:

Evaluation and comparison of digital to analogue converters based on the binary weighted resistor and the R/2R ladder network techniques

Evaluate and comparison of analogue to digital converters based on the single ramp, successive approximation and parallel comparator (flash) techniques

Advantages of using non-linear conversion curves in communications applications. Techniques for multichannel operation using multiplexing and de-multiplexing techniques applied to both digital and analogue channels

Examples of commercially available converters and the implementation of analogue input and output ports to digital processing devices found within embedded systems

L04 Design electronic circuits using physical components

Sub-system design, implementation and evaluation:

Examples of electronic subsystems

Development of specifications to achieve a useful function and design of circuits to achieve this function

Simulation of design using ECAD tools

Building of circuits as designed, application of a range of appropriate bench tests to evaluate its operation, and comparing its actual operation to the design specifications and the simulation results

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Design single stage analogue amplifier circuits to predict and measure, by simulation, the gain, frequency response and input and output resistances		M1 Relate simulation results to circuit designs and analyse discrepancies	D1 Critically analyse the relationship between the circuit design and simulation results, making justified and operable recommendations for changes to the specifications of the circuits
P1 Design single stage amplifier circuits and measure key aspects by simulation			
L02 Develop functional subsystems through an understanding of the characteristics of operational amplifiers		M2 Design operational amplifier subsystems simulated in time and frequency domains M3 Critically analyse simulation results with reference to the expected results	D2 Communicate circuit designs to specialist audiences The implications of manufacturers' data sheets are understood so that practical designs can be produced
P2 Present the key components of operational amplifiers P3 Determine the operation of subsystems from the ideal model of the operational amplifier and by simulation results			
L03 Examine the characteristics of information represented in analogue and digital format to assess techniques for the conversion of signals between analogue and digital formats		M4 Critically evaluate the characteristics and the limitations of converter topologies and their specific applications	D3 Critically evaluate the implications of resolution, conversion time and non-linear conversion curves on accuracy and noise
P4 Examine the limitations of representing information in both analogue and digital form P5 Specify the technical characteristics of converters to meet a given set of requirements			
L04 Design electronic circuits using physical components		M5 Critically analyse design equations, simulation and bench test results, ensuring discrepancies are recorded and explained	D4 Communicate circuit designs to specialist audiences, showing variation of circuit function in simulations as a result of design changes or component tolerances
P6 Design an electronic circuit P7 Simulated construct and test the design on the bench			

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

LATHI, B.P. and ZHI, D. (2009) *Modern Digital and Analog Communications Systems*. Oxford Series in Electrical and Computer Engineering. 4th Ed. Oxford University Press.

STOREY, N. (2013) *Electronics: A Systems Approach*. 5th Ed. Pearson.

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 19: Electrical and Electronic Principles

Unit 48: Manufacturing Systems Engineering

Unit code J/615/1516

Unit level 5

Credit value 15

Introduction

Manufacturing systems engineering is concerned with the design and on-going operation and enhancement of the integrated elements within a manufacturing system, which is a very complex activity, even for simple products. The art of manufacturing systems engineering is essentially designing systems that can cope with that complexity effectively.

The aim of this unit is to develop students' understanding of that complexity within a modern manufacturing environment. Among the topics covered in this unit are: elements that make up a manufacturing system, including production engineering, plant and maintenance engineering, product design, logistics, production planning and control, forecast quality assurance, accounting and purchasing, all of which work together within the manufacturing system to create products that meet customers' requirements.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain the principles of a manufacturing system and consider how to design improvements. They will be introduced to all the elements that make up a modern manufacturing system, and they will learn how to optimise the operation of existing systems through discerning use of monitoring data. Some of the elements will be developed in greater depth; of particular importance will be looking at the systems of production planning and control, which are the day-to-day tools used to manage the manufacturing system effectively.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Illustrate the principles of manufacturing systems engineering and explain their relevance to the design and enhancement of manufacturing systems.
2. Use a range of analysis tools, including value stream mapping, to determine the effectiveness and efficiency of a manufacturing system, and then develop an appropriate future state for that system.
3. Outline the impact of different production planning approaches on the effectiveness of a manufacturing system.
4. Define the responsibilities of manufacturing systems engineering and review how they enable successful organisations to remain competitive.

Essential Content

- L01 Illustrate the principles of manufacturing systems engineering and their relevance to the design and enhancement of manufacturing systems**

Manufacturing systems elements:

Elements to be considered include quality, cost, delivery performance and optimising output

Problem-solving and managing complexity, maintenance scheduling and planning, resource planning and productivity

Effect of testing and data analysis on performance

- L02 Use a range of analysis tools, including value stream mapping, to determine the effectiveness and efficiency of a manufacturing system, and then develop an appropriate future state for that system**

Analysis tools:

Introduction to value stream mapping, and the value of both current state mapping and future state mapping

Bottle-neck analysis, by using process improvement tools and techniques e.g. value stream analysis, simulation, kanban

Using key performance indicators to understand the performance of a manufacturing system e.g. overall equipment effectiveness, lead-time, cycle time, waiting time, yield, delivery performance, safety metrics

Reviewing key performance indicators; methods for presenting metrics and performance e.g. balanced scorecards, performance dashboards, Andon boards, Gemba walks

- L03 Outline the impact of different production planning approaches on the effectiveness of a manufacturing system**

Production planning approaches:

Examples of production planning strategy: push vs pull factors, kanban systems, make to stock, make to order and engineer to order

Production planning approaches such as batch and queue, pull/kanban, just-in-time, modular design, configuration at the final point, and master scheduling

Production planning management tools:

Enterprise Resource Mapping (ERP) systems, Material Resource Planning (MRP 2) and Manufacturing Execution systems, ability to managing complexity and resourcing through information technology

Industrial engineering issues: the importance of standard times and the impact on productivity and the costing of products. Standard work underpins the repeatability of process and quality control

L04 Review the functions of manufacturing systems engineering and how they enable successful organisations to remain competitive

Effectiveness of manufacturing systems:

Plant layout design, planning and control, productivity and continuous improvement, quality control and equipment effectiveness

Return on investment and capital expenditure, control of the cost of planned maintenance

Manufacturing information technology: the supply of data from the process to decision-makers e.g. failure modes for both product and system, maintenance and down time data, standard times for production, material control, energy usage

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
LO1 Illustrate the principles of manufacturing systems engineering and their relevance to the design and enhancement of manufacturing systems			D1 Apply value stream mapping to a production process to evaluate the efficiency of that process by using the current state map to suggest improvements
P1 Illustrate the principles of manufacturing engineering	P2 Explain the relevance of manufacturing systems engineering to the design of a manufacturing system	M1 Evaluate the impact that manufacturing systems have on the success of a manufacturing organisation	
LO2 Use a range of analysis tools, including value stream mapping, to determine the effectiveness and efficiency of a manufacturing system, and then develop an appropriate future state for that system			D2 Review value stream mapping against other production planning methodologies and justify its use as a production planning tool
P3 Apply value stream mapping to visualise a production process	P4 Apply value stream mapping to visualise a production process	M2 Identify optimisation opportunities through value stream mapping of a production process	
LO3 Outline the impact of different production planning approaches on the effectiveness of a manufacturing system			D3 Justify the most appropriate production planning technique and its suitability for a particular manufacturing approach, such as make to stock, make to order, or engineer to order
P4 Identify the common production planning approaches and state their impact on manufacturing systems	P5 Define the types of manufacturing approach, such as make to stock, make to order and engineer to order	M3 Evaluate the effectiveness of production planning methods M4 Explore the effectiveness of common production planning techniques to identify which production approach they complement	

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Review the functions of manufacturing systems engineering and how they enable successful organisations to remain competitive		D4 Critically consider the elements of an existing manufacturing system to appraise why this is successful
P6 Define the core responsibilities of a manufacturing systems engineer P7 Identify the key contributing success factors of a manufacturing system	M5 Evaluate the impact that a manufacturing systems engineering has on successful manufacturing organisations	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

BICHENO, J. and HOLWEG, M. (2009) *The Lean Toolbox*. 4th Ed. PICSIE Books.

CHOPRA, S. and MEINDL, P. (2015) *Supply Chain Management: Strategy, Planning, and Operation (Global Edition)*. 6th Ed. Pearson.

SLACK, N. (2013) *Operations Management*. 7th Ed. Pearson.

WOMACK, J., JONES, D. and ROOS, D. (1990) *The Machine That Changed the World*. Free Press.

Websites

<http://www.industryweek.com/> Industry Week
Five Benefits of an MES
(Article)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 49: Lean Manufacturing

Unit 50: Advanced Manufacturing Technology

Unit 51: Sustainability

Unit 49: Lean Manufacturing

Unit code L/615/1517

Unit level 5

Credit value 15

Introduction

Lean manufacturing is a systematic approach to minimising waste in a manufacturing system, by focusing on the activities that add the most value through the eyes of the customer. The basis of lean manufacturing originated in the car industry and was developed by Toyota in Japan. Lean is now used extensively worldwide, in all types and size of organisation, to improve international competitiveness. It is therefore crucial for manufacturing engineers to be able to design and operate manufacturing systems that employ lean successfully

The aim of this unit is to introduce students to the principles and processes of lean manufacturing, so that they can become an effective and committed practitioner of lean in whatever industry sector they are employed in. To do this, the unit will explore the tools and techniques that are applied by organisations practicing lean. The students will consider both the benefits and challenges of using lean manufacturing, and become sufficiently knowledgeable about the most important process tools and techniques to be able to operate and use them.

Among the topics included in this unit are: scoping and defining lean manufacturing, the benefits and challenges of adopting Lean, The Toyota Production System (TPS), common tools and techniques associated with lean manufacturing and process improvement, and the most appropriate improvement tool(s) to tackle a problem.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain the common principles of lean manufacturing, compare the Toyota Production System with the now more widely adopted generic approaches to lean manufacturing, utilise a range of the process improvement tools used within lean manufacturing, and demonstrate effective communication skills in order to lead the process of continuous improvement across an organisation.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Examine the common principles of lean manufacturing and how the implementation of a lean production system contributes to business success.
2. Evaluate the Toyota Production System against the now more widely adopted generic approaches to lean manufacturing.
3. Specify a range of the process improvement tools used within lean manufacturing.
4. Demonstrate effective communication skills in order to lead the process of continuous improvement across an organisation.

Essential Content

L01 Examine the common principles of lean manufacturing and how the implementation of a lean production system contributes to business success

Scoping and defining lean manufacturing:

The common principles of lean manufacturing philosophy

Origins of lean

Defining lean and its importance to the customer

Identifying and eliminating material and process waste that adds no value from the customer's perspective

Benefits and challenges of adopting lean:

Why an organisation would consider adopting a lean philosophy

Productivity, quality, customer satisfaction, delivery performance

The benefits of a lean organisation to the customer, the employees, and the shareholders

Outline the benefits of lean in terms of cost, quality, delivery, customer satisfaction, management complexity and cost to serve

Challenges of implementation: change management, managing expectation, empowerment, motivation, 'burning platform', investment, supply chain

L02 Evaluate the Toyota Production System against the now more widely adopted generic approaches to lean manufacturing

Toyota Production System:

Research the Toyota Production System (TPS) and identify the fundamental elements of the TPS and the motivation behind creating the TPS

Compare TPS with the recognised theory and production systems publicised by other global manufacturers: how do they differ and how they are similar?

How the common principles are now being adopted outside manufacturing

L03 Specify a range of the process improvement tools used within lean manufacturing

Common tools and techniques associated with lean manufacturing and process improvement:

Seven Wastes, continuous flow, kanban (pull System), just-in-time (JIT), lean simulation activities, value stream mapping, Poke Yoke, 5 Whys (Root Cause Analysis), Total Preventive Maintenance

Plan-do-check-act (PDCA), Single Minute Exchange of Die (SMED), A3 Reporting, Visual Management

Selecting the most appropriate improvement tool to tackle a problem:

Tools for improving quality and delivery

L04 Demonstrate effective communication skills in order to lead the process of continuous improvement across an organisation

Communication:

Facilitate a small group in the application and use of one of the lean tools (e.g. 5 Whys technique, A3 Report)

Identify factors that influence engagement within a group, facilitation skills and change management

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Examine the common principles of lean manufacturing and how the implementation of a lean production system contributes to business success			D1 Critically evaluate the advantages and disadvantages of implementing a lean production system
P1 Examine how lean manufacturing principles can improve business performance	M1 Analyse the benefits of adopting lean manufacturing M2 Analyse the key challenges encountered when implementing lean manufacturing		
L02 Evaluate the Toyota Production System against the now more widely adopted generic approaches to lean manufacturing			D2 Critically evaluate the Toyota Production System in comparison to a researched alternative, determining the elements that are critical in making the approach successful
P2 Distinguish the principles of the Toyota Production System P3 Research alternative lean production system approaches P4 Examine the origins of lean and specify its early applications	M3 Critically analyse alternative examples of lean production systems to determine the common principles, with reference to the Toyota Production System		
L03 Specify a range of the process improvement tools used within lean manufacturing			D3 Make a supported and justified recommendation for a lean tool to be applied in addressing a specified process improvement
P5 Specify which tools are commonly associated with lean manufacturing and determine what context they would be applied in	M4 Evaluate how the most common lean tools can be applied to eliminate waste in a manufacturing process		

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Demonstrate effective communication skills in order to lead the process of continuous improvement across an organisation		D4 Critically evaluate the importance of the skills required to successfully deploy change in an organisation
P6 Demonstrate and deliver a communication approach that can be taken to manage change in an organisation	M5 Evaluate the impact of this communication approach, including an evaluation of impact on employees and personal effectiveness	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

BICHENO, J. and HOLWEG, M. (2009) *The Lean Toolbox*. 4th Ed. PICSIE Books.

LIKER, J. and MEIER, D. (2006) *The Toyota Way Fieldbook*. McGraw-Hill.

WOMACK, J., JONES, D. and ROOS, D. (1990) *The Machine That Changed the World*. Free Press.

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 48: Manufacturing Systems Engineering

Unit 50: Advanced Manufacturing Technology

Unit 51: Sustainability

Unit 50: Advanced Manufacturing Technology

Unit code	R/615/1518
Unit level	5
Credit value	15

Introduction

The ability of successful companies to meet the growing demand of customers is heavily influenced by the development of advanced manufacturing technologies. Customers expect high complexity products, on demand, and with a growing element of customisation. In adopting advanced manufacturing technologies, successful companies will ensure faster time to market of new products, improve products and processes, use new, sustainable, materials, and customise to customer requirements. Manufacturing systems engineering underpins this development.

In order to meet changing customer expectations and gain competitive advantage, focus needs to be applied to developing smart factories and advanced manufacturing technologies. Manufacturing organisations will seek integration between manufacturing technology, high performance computing, the internet, and the product at all stages of its life cycle.

Industry 4.0 is the term that has been adopted to describe the 'fourth' industrial revolution currently underway, at present, in the manufacturing and commercial sectors of our society. It is a revolution based on the integration of cyber-physical systems with the Internet of Things and services. For the manufacturing sector, this integration has been enabled by successfully combining high performance computing, the internet and the development of advanced manufacturing technologies. Industry 4.0 is changing the way the world's most successful companies produce the products that their global customers demand.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to analyse and evaluate the potential of using advanced manufacturing technologies to improve the competitive advantage of the organisations adopting them. The student will develop knowledge and understanding of advanced manufacturing technologies, digitalisation and a range of advanced manufacturing technologies. They will also develop their own research activities into the latest developments.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Recognise a range of advanced manufacturing processes and cite examples of where they are most effective.
2. Analyse advanced manufacturing technologies to determine their appropriateness for an application or process.
3. Analyse an existing manufactured product and associated process to introduce proposals for possible improvements based on the introduction of advanced manufacturing technologies.
4. Evaluate the concept of the next industrial revolution to determine the impact on both manufacturers and the consumer.

Essential Content

L01 Recognise a range of advanced manufacturing processes to cite examples of where they are most effective

Manufacturing processes:

Pressing and forming, casting and moulding, joining and soldering, mixing, final assembly, packaging, material handling, quality control/inspection

Advanced manufacturing processes:

Additive manufacturing technology (e.g. replacing forming, moulding, pressing), 3D printing, impact on rapid prototyping, availability of spares/obsolete parts, medical components available and customised

Mass customisation through 3D printing, opening up a self-serve market

Robotics/human interface and automation, high-precision technology and productivity e.g. aerospace, automotive, electronics assembly

Types of application or industry:

Industry examples: aerospace, automotive, healthcare, electronics, food and beverage, chemical and pharmaceutical, minerals, oil and gas, retail, fashion

Application examples: assembly, joining, moulding, soldering

L02 Analyse advanced manufacturing technologies to determine their appropriateness for an application or process

Manufacturing technologies:

High precision robotics and automation: healthcare (components and processes), aerospace, automotive, process control and visualisation through automation technology

Improvement in productivity through greater automation

Quality of manufacturing processes improved through integration of robotics

Examples of using 3D printing and other forms of additive manufacturing to produce medical equipment, spares parts for items that may have become obsolete, mass customisation; what the customer wants, when they want it

LO3 Analyse an existing manufactured product and associated process to introduce proposals for possible improvements based on the introduction of advanced manufacturing technologies

Manufactured product:

Research the traditional methods used to manufacture an existing product, determine the associated processes required to bring it to market and identify the limitations of these methods and processes

Explore how advanced manufacturing technology could be applied to produce this product and suggest how applying such processes would influence its production, costs, time to market and customer satisfaction (e.g. healthcare/medical such as hip joint, traditional method vs mass customisation and the possible use of 3D printing)

3D printing and its availability is opening up new markets, but also new business models for organisations; explore the future possibilities for self-serve/or self-production of items

LO4 Evaluate the concept of the next industrial revolution to determine the impact on both manufacturers and the consumer

Next industrial revolution:

Industry 4.0

Internet of Things: over time industry has transformed from being local-based to communication-based technology; the possibilities for connected technology and connected factories are ever increasing

Cyber-physical systems: collaborative robotics and highly integrated manufacturing systems

Mass customisation: there is a growing demand and desire for individual products. In 1908, referring to the Model T, Henry Ford said, "You can have any colour, as long as it's black." In 2015 you can have trillions of variations of the Ford F150; advanced manufacturing technology and the ability to manage complexity is key to that realisation

Digitalisation and increased automation; the ability to simulate and create a digital twin has the potential to dramatically reduce time to market

The drive to increase efficiency requires innovation and innovative technology; 25% of all energy used is required by industry alone

Big data; the development of an ever connected production environment alongside cloud computing presents a challenge of having a stream of production data and the need to analyse this in order to make timely informed decisions

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Recognise a range of advanced manufacturing processes to cite examples of where they are most effective		M1 Compare a traditional manufacturer to one employing advanced manufacturing to discuss the fundamental differences	D1 Research and evaluate a manufactured product and identify the technology used
P1 Recognise a range of advanced manufacturing process or technologies and cite examples of where they are most effective			
L02 Analyse advanced manufacturing technologies to determine their appropriateness for an application or process		M2 Explore how advanced manufacturing could be applied, and give examples of where technology would be suited	D2 Examine the potential justification for an organisation to invest in advanced manufacturing technology
P2 Analyse advanced manufacturing technologies to determine their appropriateness for an application or process			
L03 Analyse an existing manufactured product and associated process to introduce proposals for possible improvements based on the introduction of advanced manufacturing technologies		M3 Evaluate the effectiveness of the current method and suggest an alternative advanced manufacturing technology	D3 Critically evaluate the impact of utilising advanced manufacturing technology rather than the existing method on both the customer and the manufacturer
P3 Analyse an existing manufactured product and identify the key technology used to produce the item			
L04 Evaluate the concept of the next industrial revolution to determine the impact on both manufacturers and the consumer		M4 Evaluate the impact of advanced manufacturing on both manufacturers and the customer	D4 Investigate and justify the types of industry or product that would benefit most from an innovative advanced manufacturing approach
P4 Evaluate the concept of a 4th industrial revolution P5 Identify the key elements of Industry 4.0			

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

LEFTERI, C. (2012) *Making It: Manufacturing Techniques for Product Design*. 2nd Ed. Laurence King.

WRIGHT, P.K. (2000) *21st Century Manufacturing*. New Jersey: Prentice-Hall Inc.

Websites

https://www.gov.uk	GOV.UK Future of manufacturing: a new era of opportunity and challenge for the UK (Report)
https://w3.siemens.com/	Siemens The Future of Manufacturing (General Reference)
https://hvm.catapult.org.uk/	Catapult High Value Manufacturing (General Reference)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 48: Manufacturing Systems Engineering

Unit 49: Lean Manufacturing

Unit 51 Sustainability

Unit 51: Sustainability

Unit code Y/615/1519

Unit level 5

Credit value 15

Introduction

Living and working in the 21st century will bring a range of sustainability challenges that our society has not seen before. For many people on our planet key resources such as food, water and energy will be in short supply, whilst the effects of climate change will be felt by everyone.

The Brundtland Commission of the United Nations on 20th March 20th 1987 defined sustainability as: "sustainable development is development that meets the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs". Engineers will be in the frontline of the battle to overcome the challenges of creating a sustainable economy, but no single discipline will have the capability to tackle the problems alone. Sustainability is a multidisciplinary challenge, and engineers of the future will have to work collaboratively with a whole range of other stakeholders, such as scientists, politicians and financiers, if they are to be able to produce the practical and technological solutions required within the necessarily urgent time scales.

This unit is designed to support the Professional Engineering and Professional Engineering Management core units at Level 4 and 5. On successful completion of this unit the student will possess a wide range of knowledge and understanding of the issues and topics associated with sustainability and low carbon engineering.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Determine the nature and scope of the technical challenges of ensuring sustainable development.
2. Articulate the importance of collaborating with other disciplines in developing technical solutions to sustainability problems.
3. Evaluate the use of alternative energy generation techniques in relation to their contribution to a low carbon economy.
4. Analyse a variety of data sources to estimate the carbon footprint of a socio-technical scenario.

Essential Content

LO1 **Determine the nature and scope of the technical challenges of ensuring sustainable development**

The scope and social context of sustainability:

Sustainable development

Brundtland definition

Global demographics, trends and predictions

Population growth

Standard of living, actual and expected

Urbanisation and the balance of urban/rural space

Sustainable design

Environmental issues:

Climate change, planetary energy balance, carbon cycle science, the 2⁰ C climate change obligation

Carbon capture and sequestration

Pollution, pollution prevention and management

Carbon trading

Eco-systems and habitat

Resources:

Food, water and energy

LO2 **Articulate the importance of collaborating with other disciplines in developing technical solutions to sustainability problems**

Systems thinking and socio-technical systems:

The politics and economics of sustainability

Kyoto Protocol

COP21

European Union Emissions Trading Scheme

Sustainable infrastructures:

Low carbon transport systems

Sustainable cities

Green building

Power storage and distribution

Sustainable logistics

Waste and recycling

L03 Evaluate the use of alternative energy generation techniques in relationship to their contribution to a low carbon economy

Alternative energy resources:

Nuclear, solar, wind, tidal and wave, biomass and bioenergy

Whole life cycle costing

Precautionary principle

L04 Analyse a variety of data sources to estimate the carbon footprint of a socio-technical scenario

Types of carbon footprint:

Organisational

Value chain

Product

Carbon footprint science

Calculation methodologies: direct and indirect

System boundaries

Case study examples

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Determine the nature and scope of the technical challenges of ensuring sustainable development			D1 Critically analyse how the interrelationship between the three key areas of technical challenges can be managed systemically to ensure maximum sustainability
P1 Determine the nature and scope of the technical challenges of ensuring sustainable development, considering environmental, resource and demand issues	M1 Review existing sustainable development plans to identify the way technical challenges are met and overcome		
L02 Articulate the importance of collaborating with other disciplines in developing technical solutions to sustainability problems			D2 Critically analyse how a systemic approach can be used to support interdisciplinary collaboration in developing sustainable infrastructures
P2 Articulate the interdisciplinary issues associated with the construction of sustainable infrastructures, with attention to the competing pressures within these infrastructures	M2 Analyse how political and economic issues can impact upon technical solutions		
L03 Evaluate the use of alternative energy generation techniques in relation to their contribution to a low carbon economy			D3 Critically analyse the selection of alternative energy generation techniques for a low carbon economy within the wider socio-technical sustainability agenda
P3 Evaluate the issues that need to be considered when selecting alternative low carbon energy sources	M3 Analyse the difficulties in the evaluation and selection of alternative energy generation techniques for a low carbon economy		

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Analyse a variety of data sources to estimate the carbon footprint of a socio-technical scenario		D4 Analyse the alternative types and methods available for calculating the carbon footprint of a socio-technical scenario, and make justified recommendations, selecting a best-fit method for effective comparison of systems
P4 Evaluate a variety of data sources to estimate the carbon footprint of a number of socio-technical scenarios P5 Describe the process of calculating a carbon footprint	M4 Apply appropriate data from a range of options to calculate the carbon footprint of a socio-technical scenario	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

BERNERS-LEE, M. (2010) *How Bad Are Bananas?* Profile Books.

BOYLE, G. (2012) *Energy Systems and Sustainability: Power for a Sustainable Future*. Oxford University Press.

FENNER, A. and AINGER, C. (2013) *Sustainable Infrastructures: Principles into Practice*. ICE Publishing.

HELM, D. (2012) *The Carbon Crunch: Why we are Getting Climate Change Wrong and How to Fix It*. Yale University Press.

HONE, D. (2014) *Putting The Genie Back: 2°C Will Be Harder Than We Think*. Whitefox Publishing.

Websites

http://www.carbontrust.com	Carbon Trust Carbon foot printing (General Reference)
http://www.fern.org/	FERN Trading Carbon How it Works and Why it is Controversial (Ebook)
https://www.populationinstitute.org	Population Institute Demographic Vulnerability report (Report)
http://www.un.org/	United Nations Integrating Population Issues into Sustainable Development (Report)
http://www.unwater.org/	United Nations Water Annual World Water Development Report (Report)
https://sustainabledevelopment.un.org/	United Nations Sustainable Development Knowledge Platform (General Reference)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 4: Managing a Professional Engineering Project

Unit 35: Professional Engineering Management

Unit 52:

Further Electrical, Electronic and Digital Principles

Unit code	L/615/1520
Unit level	5
Credit value	15

Introduction

Almost every aspect of our lives relies on electrical powered, electronically controlled machines and devices, many of them digital in format. To properly understand how to make the most efficient use of these devices in a safe and economical way, it is vital to have a thorough knowledge of the underlying principles on which they rely.

This unit builds on the preliminary techniques and skills introduced in *Unit 19: Electrical, Electronic and Unit 20: Digital Principles*.

The emphasis in this unit will be in developing a structured approach to the analysis of AC single-phase and three-phase powered circuitry. This will help students to arrive at the solution in the most efficient way, with the greatest probability of it being correct. In addition, students will be introduced to the expanding use of computers, using specialised software to solve electrical, electronic and digital circuits. This will allow students to develop the necessary confidence and competence in the four key areas of mathematical techniques, circuit analysis, circuit simulation and laboratory practice.

Successful completion of this unit will enable students to cope with increasingly complex problems and prepare them for the challenge of Level 6 academic programmes.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Use appropriate mathematical techniques to solve a range of electrical and electronic problems.
2. Apply appropriate circuit theorems to solve problems in electrical networks.
3. Use appropriate laboratory and computer simulation techniques to investigate both analogue and digital circuits and interpret the results.
4. Explain the characteristics of non-linear circuits to predict their behaviour under a variety of conditions.

Essential Content

L01 Use appropriate mathematical techniques to solve a range of electrical and electronic problems

Formal steady state circuit analysis:

Determinants, mesh analysis and nodal analysis (and their comparison)

Analysis using ideal sources, superposition theorem

AC circuit analysis:

Complex notation, polar and Cartesian coordinates, RLC circuits

Advanced use of phasor diagrams

Power: instantaneous power, power factor, apparent power, the power triangle

L02 Apply appropriate circuit theorems to solve problems in electrical networks

Three-phase theory:

Application of trigonometric methods to solution of phasor diagrams

Application of complex numbers to represent quantities in AC circuits

Single-phase representation

Solution of balanced three-phase circuits

Complex notation applied to three-phase, unbalanced loads, unconnected neutral point

Power, reactive power and power factor correction for three-phase systems

L03 Use appropriate laboratory and computer simulation techniques to investigate both analogue and digital circuits and interpret the results

ECAD:

Use of computer modelling and simulation techniques to analyse and solve electronic, electrical and digital circuits, such as filters and amplifiers using operational amplifiers and discrete devices; digital logic circuit elements; and simple combination and sequential circuits

L04 Explain the characteristics of non-linear circuits to predict their behaviour under a variety of conditions

Non-linear circuits:

Characteristics of linear and non-linear circuits, mathematical modelling of a number of semiconductor devices, including diodes, bipolar and Field Effect Transistors and how this can be used to predict their 'real' behaviour in practice

Mathematically modelling the behaviour of semiconductor diodes, bipolar transistors and Field Effect Transistors

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Use appropriate mathematical techniques to solve a range of electrical and electronic problems			D1 Apply an accurate approach to problem-solving with clear justification of methods used with a high standard of explanation for each method
P1 Produce basic solutions to electrical and electronic problems to a satisfactory standard, but with some misunderstandings	M1 Provide reasoned solutions to problems, showing a logical approach and using a range of mathematical methods		
L02 Apply appropriate circuit theorems to solve problems in electrical networks			D2 Evaluate electrical theory by using a variety of mathematical and other methods to produce accurate solutions with clear justification of the methods used
P2 Use electrical network theory to provide solutions to problems to a satisfactory standard, with some level of ambiguity and errors	M2 Apply electrical network theory and provide accurate solutions to problems, showing a logical approach		
L03 Use appropriate laboratory and computer simulation techniques to investigate both analogue and digital circuits and interpret the results			D3 Present a clear evaluation of the operation of current analogue and digital logic circuits by comparing their predicted behaviour with the simulated, theoretical and practical results
P3 Use appropriate laboratory and computer simulation techniques to explain the performance of digital logic circuits and analogue circuits	M3 Explore analogue and digital logic circuits to show a structured approach to the solutions of problems using a variety of methods		
L04 Explain the characteristics of non-linear circuits to predict their behaviour under a variety of conditions			D4 Evaluate the application of theory, simulation and practical investigation of a number of circuits using non-linear circuits
P4 Describe the characteristics of non-linear circuits and how their behaviour differs in practice with 'ideal' devices	M4 Investigate a variety of non-linear circuits by calculating the effects of non-linear behaviour in a number of differing circuits		

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

- BIRD, J. (2013) *Electrical Circuit Theory and Technology*. Routledge.
- HUGHES, E. et al. (2012) *Electrical and Electronic Technology*. Pearson.
- REHG, J.A. and SARTORI, G.J. (2005) *Industrial Electronics*. Prentice-Hall.
- WILAMOWSKI, B.M. and IRWIN, J.D. (2011) *The Industrial Electronic Handbook: Fundamentals of Industrial Electronics*. CRC Press.

Websites

http://www.bath.ac.uk/	University of Bath Patents (General Reference)
http://www.bsigroup.com	British Standards Institution Standards (General Reference)
https://www.ieee.org	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers Standards (General Reference)
https://app.knovel.com/	Knovel (Research)
https://www.esdu.com	Engineering Science Data Unit (General Reference)
http://www.theiet.org/	Institute of Engineering and Technology (General Reference)
http://www.theiet.org/	Institute of Engineering and Technology (Journal)
http://www.newelectronics.co.uk/	New Electronics Digital Magazine (Journal)
http://www.electronicsworld.co.uk/	Electronics World Magazine (Journal)
http://tie.ieee-ies.org/	Industrial Economics Society (Journal)
http://www.epemag.com/	Everyday Practical Electronics Magazine (Journal)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 19: Electrical and Electronic Principles

Unit 20: Digital Principles

Unit 53: Utilisation of Electrical Power

Unit code	R/615/1521
Unit level	5
Credit value	15

Introduction

The supply, processing and usage of electrical energy is a leading preoccupation around the world today, with significant technical, economic, environmental and societal implications. Engineers have to engage seriously with this issue and need to be aware of the real and practical impact of their decisions.

The aim of this unit is to develop students' understanding of electrical power systems and power distribution, giving consideration to the advantages and disadvantages of alternative power sources.

Students will learn about the construction and characteristics of power transmission and distribution systems, including the interconnections of systems and their necessary protection. Students will also consider the economics of components, power systems and alternative energy sources, in line with emerging developments within the energy sector.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain the demands, sources and construction of electrical power generation and distribution systems, review the interconnections of power systems and their necessary protection, identify the requirement for engineering activity and describe new and emerging methods to optimise energy usage.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Examine the demands, sources and construction of electrical power generation and distribution systems.
2. Explore the interconnections of power systems and their protection to explain the critical processes and the effects of failure and the importance of electrical safety.
3. Evaluate the effectiveness of forms of engineering activity to promote sustainable development, with consideration of the economics of components, power systems and alternative energy sources.
4. Discuss new and emerging methods to optimise energy usage, conversion and storage techniques.

Essential Content

LO1 **Examine the demands, sources and construction of electrical power generation and distribution systems**

Demands of a power generation and transmission system:

Total power demands of a defined country over a period of a working week, identifying average, minimum and maximum demands

Overall annual energy consumption of domestic, industrial, transport and other systems, identifying and quantifying energy losses

Extent of delivered energy that is in the form of electrical energy

Comparison between the demands of a G20 industrial economy with that of a Third World economy; analysis of the trends of energy supply and demand data to predict future energy requirements and budgets

Identification of the contribution to the energy supplied by each of the significant primary sources of energy of a defined country. Influence of long-term governmental policy on managing the energy budget

LO2 **Explore the interconnections of power systems and their protection to explain the critical processes and the effects of failure and the importance of electrical safety**

Construction of power generation and transmission systems:

Comparisons between the distribution of power using DC and single-phase and polyphase AC transmission systems, amplitude and phase of voltages and currents in three-phase systems with resistive and complex loads

Power factor and power measurement techniques of AC systems, including identification of a range of loads and their respective power factors, consequences of loads with poor power factor and the advantages of applying power factor corrections

Calculation of power factor correction components

Recognition of the effects of perturbations and harmonics within AC systems and describing methods to measure and reduce harmonics

The need to protect the power distribution network from the effects of overload or damage, and identification of the requirements of a robust protection system

Evaluation of the impedance of an AC transmission line, its power losses and its effect on the power delivered to a load

Review safety procedures associated with power networks and techniques for the safe measurement of system parameters

Analysis of a power network with multiple generators, transmission lines and loads using power systems simulation software

L03 Evaluate the effectiveness of forms of engineering activity to promote sustainable development, with consideration of the economics of components, power systems and alternative energy sources

Sources of electrical energy:

Efficiency, costs, security and environmental implications of energy production using coal, oil and natural gas

Definition of 'renewable' in relation to sources of energy

Evaluation of the efficiency, costs, security and environmental implications of energy production using renewable sources of mechanical kinetic energy, including wave, tidal, large- and small-scale hydro and wind

Evaluate the efficiency, costs, security and environmental implications of energy production using solar heating, solar photovoltaics, biomass, fuel cells and geothermal techniques. Current state of research into nuclear, fusion and fission energy and other novel forms of energy

L04 Discuss new and emerging methods to optimise energy usage, conversion and storage techniques

Techniques for optimising electrical energy generation:

Techniques for optimising the generation of electricity in power stations and small-scale generators by using varied and distributed generation systems and managing the generation of power

Techniques for optimising energy usage and conversion:

Evaluating technologies and techniques for improving the efficiency or reducing the energy consumption of equipment in common use, including lighting, heating, transport and industrial processes

Energy storage techniques:

The need for energy storage techniques as part of an energy management programme, characteristics of short-term and long-term energy storage techniques and their connection to the power grid, including, hydro, battery, super capacitor, flywheel and thermal

Emerging battery technologies and battery management techniques

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Examine the demands, sources and construction of electrical power generation and distribution systems			D1 Critically evaluate governmental policies for managing energy budgets in the long term, making justified recommendations
P1 Examine the key aspects of a country's energy supply, demand and losses to create a balanced energy budget for the example	M1 Apply reliable data to quantify past and current energy trends and predict future trends, having first established the reliability of data from a variety of sources		
L02 Explore the interconnections of power systems and their protection to explain the critical processes and the effects of failure and the importance of electrical safety			D2 Critically evaluate the technologies for maintaining a high quality electrical supply to customers and demonstrate the advantages of applying these by computer simulation or otherwise
P2 Explore the key aspects of three-phase power systems using distributed generators and loads and protection P3 Perform calculations and simulations on example systems, showing power losses and the advantages of applying power factor correction	M2 Analyse and interpret the results of computer-based simulations of power networks		
L03 Evaluate the effectiveness of forms of engineering activity to promote sustainable development, with consideration of the economics of components, power systems and alternative energy sources			D3 Critically evaluate novel forms of energy generation using recent, peer-reviewed publications, taking into account efficiency, costs, security and environmental implications
P4 Evaluate the technology of renewable sources of energy, taking into account efficiency, costs, security and environmental implications	M3 Illustrate the application of renewable energy sources to meet existing demands, taking into account efficiency, costs, security and environmental implications		

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Discuss new and emerging methods to optimise energy usage, conversion and storage techniques		D4 Critically evaluate novel forms of energy optimisation and efficiency and their applications using recent, peer-reviewed publications
P5 Discuss representative examples of existing and emerging methods of energy optimisation	M4 Evaluate the environmental effects of applying known energy optimisation techniques	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

BAYLIS, C. and HARDY, B. (2012) *Transmission and Distribution Electrical Engineering*. Elsevier Science and Technology. Newnes.

BREEZE, P.A. (2014) *Power Generation Technologies*. 2nd Ed. Newnes.

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 41: Distributed Control Systems

Unit 44: Industrial Power, Electronics and Storage

Unit 54: Further Control Systems Engineering

Unit code	Y/615/1522
Unit level	5
Credit value	15

Introduction

Control engineering is usually found at the top level of large projects in determining the engineering system performance specifications, the required interfaces, and hardware and software requirements. In most industries, stricter requirements for product quality, energy efficiency, pollution level controls and the general drive for improved performance, place tighter limits on control systems.

A reliable and high performance control system depends a great deal upon accurate measurements obtained from a range of transducers, mechanical, electrical, optical and, in some cases, chemical. The information provided is often converted into digital signals on which the control system acts to maintain optimum performance of the process.

The aim of this unit is to provide the student with the fundamental knowledge of the principles of control systems and the basic understanding of how these principles can be used to model and analyse simple control systems found in industry. The study of control engineering is essential for most engineering disciplines, including electrical, mechanical, chemical, aerospace, and manufacturing.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to devise a typical three-term controller for optimum performance, grasp fundamental control techniques and how these can be used to predict and control the behaviour of a range of engineering processes in a practical way.

Learning Outcomes

1. Discuss the basic concepts of control systems and their contemporary applications.
2. Analyse the elements of a typical, high-level control system and its model development.
3. Analyse the structure and behaviour of typical control systems.
4. Explain the application of control parameters to produce optimum performance of a control system.

Essential Content

L01 **Examine the basic concepts of control systems and their contemporary applications**

Background, terminology, underpinning principles and system basics:

Brief history of control systems and their industrial relevance, control system terminology and identification, including plant, process, system, disturbances, inputs and outputs, initial time, additivity, homogeneity, linearity and stability

Basic control systems properties and configurations, classification and performance criteria of control systems

Block diagram representation of simple control systems and their relevance in industrial application

Principles of Transfer Function (TF) for open and closed loop systems, use of current computational tools for use in control systems (e.g. Matlab, Simulink, Labview)

L02 **Explore the elements of a typical, high-level control system and its model development**

Developing system applications:

Simple mathematical models of electrical, mechanical and electro-mechanical systems

Block diagram representation of simple control systems

Introduction of Laplace transform and its properties, simple first and second order systems and their dynamic responses

Modelling and simulation of simple first and second order control system using current computational tool (e.g. Matlab/Simulink)

L03 **Analyse the structure and behaviour of typical control systems**

System behaviour:

Transient and steady behaviour of simple open loop and closed loop control systems in response to a unit step input

Practical closed loop control systems and the effect of external disturbances

Poles and zeros and their role in the stability of control systems, steady-state error. Applicability of Routh-Hurwitz stability criterion

Use of current computational tools (e.g. Matlab, Simulink) to model, simulate and analyse the dynamic behaviour of simple open and closed loop control systems

L04 Explain the application of control parameters to produce optimum performance of a control system

Control parameters and optimum performance:

Introduction to the three-term PID controller, the role of a Proportional controller (P), Integral controller (I) and the Derivative controller (D)

General block diagram representation and analysis, effects of each term, P-I-D, on first and second order systems

Simple closed loop analysis of the different combinations of the terms in PID controllers, effect of the three terms on disturbance signals and an introduction to simple PID controller tuning methods

Modelling and simulation using current computational tools (e.g. Matlab, Simulink, Labview) to analyse the effects of each P-I-D term, individually and in combination on a control system

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Examine the basic concepts of control systems and their contemporary applications			D1 Evaluate the ability of the PID controller to demonstrate high-level control techniques
P1 Examine the basic concepts of control systems using block diagram representation and simplifications	P2 Model simple open and closed loop control systems simulation software	M1 Apply advanced modelling techniques using commercially available control software M2 Develop the block diagram of a closed loop system for the position control of DC motor using a PID controller	
L02 Explore the elements of a typical, high-level control system and its model development			D2 Perform high-level self-tuning techniques
P3 Explore the main building blocks for high-level electrical and mechanical control systems	P4 Apply Laplace transforms to basic mechanical or electrical control problems	M3 Analyse Electrical, Mechanical and Electro-Mechanical systems using appropriate mathematical models	
L03 Analyse the structure and behaviour of typical control systems			D3 Evaluate the performance of an electro-mechanical system
P5 Analyse the behaviour and response of first and second order systems	P6 Analyse the stability of control systems and the techniques used to improve stability in these systems	M4 Justify the stability of a system using analytical techniques	

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Examine the application of control parameters to produce optimum performance of a control system		D4 Evaluate the stability of a control system
P7 Examine the role and implementation of the PID controllers in a simple electrical and mechanical control system P8 Examine the effects of the P, I, and D parameters on the dynamic responses of the first and second order systems	M5 Analyse dynamic responses of PID controllers in terms of position control, tracking and disturbance rejection	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

DABNEY, J.B. and HARMAN, T.L. (2003) *Mastering Simulink*. Prentice Hall.

DORF, R.C. and BISHOP, R.H. (2014) *Modern Control Systems*. 12th Ed. Pearson.

NISE, N.S. (2011) *Control Systems Engineering*. 6th Ed. John Wiley & Sons.

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 41: Distributed Control Systems

Unit 16: Instrumentation and Control Systems

Unit 62: Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning (HVAC)

Unit code H/615/1524

Unit level 5

Credit value 15

Introduction

The buildings we use in everyday life to live, work, study and socialise are becoming increasingly more complex in their design. As well as being subject to more stringent environmental emission targets, within these buildings the heating, ventilation and air conditioning (HVAC) systems play a vital role in maintaining the comfort of the occupants within the built environment.

This unit will introduce students to some of the most important HVAC systems and their supporting elements, and the underpinning science that is currently used in many different buildings around the world.

Subjects covered include: ventilation rates, systems, legislation, strategies and associated equipment. Also explored are topics such as air conditioning systems, cooling loads, psychrometric principles and processes, heating systems, fuels, combustion processes, boiler efficiency calculations and Building Management Systems (BMS).

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain the fundamental principles of HVAC systems and discuss the operational advantages of using BMS for maintaining the careful balance between ergonomic climate control and maximum economic efficiency.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explain the operating principles of non-domestic ventilation systems.
2. Explore the range of air conditioning systems.
3. Investigate the operational characteristics of non-domestic heating systems.
4. Describe the role Building Management Systems (BMS) have in controlling and monitoring HVAC systems.

Essential Content

LO1 Explain the operating principles of non-domestic ventilation systems

Ventilation systems:

Ventilation requirements: approved documents, requirements for occupants or processes

Ventilation strategies: local or centralised systems, natural ventilation, extract only, supply only and balanced systems

Ventilation system components and typical system layouts

Ventilation rates:

Calculation of ventilation rates, supply for occupants or processes, supply to achieve required room air change rate

Mass and volumetric flow rates to maintain design room conditions

Fans:

Fan types and operational characteristics

Fan selection and Fan Laws

LO2 Explore the range of air conditioning systems

Air conditioning systems:

Air conditioning requirements: requirement for comfort cooling or close control

Air conditioning strategies: types of air conditioning plant

Cooling loads:

Estimation of heat gains and cooling loads

Factors affecting the cooling load requirements, building/room use, shading, building construction and orientation, internal heat gains

Psychrometrics:

Psychrometric principles: psychrometric terms and properties

Plotting psychrometric processes using charts

Use of psychrometric charts to determine cooling coil, heater battery, frost coil and humidifier duties

L03 Investigate the operational characteristics of non-domestic heating systems

Heating systems:

Heating requirements: approved documents, occupant's comfort

Heat loss calculations: heat losses through a structure, U values and their use in calculating heating load requirements

Heating strategies: local or centralised systems

Heating system components and typical system layouts

Fuels:

Properties and characteristics of common solid, liquid and gaseous fuels

Combustion:

Combustion principles

Products of complete and incomplete combustion and their implications

Minimum air requirements for stoichiometric combustion

Causes of incomplete combustion

Boiler efficiency:

Boiler efficiency calculations

L04 Describe the role Building Management Systems (BMS) have in controlling and monitoring HVAC systems

Requirement of the BMS:

Client/end user requirements and operational needs, energy efficiency concerns

Function of a BMS:

Systems controlled by BMS: heating, lighting, ventilation, air conditioning, security/access

Energy monitoring and reporting

BMS hardware:

Types of BMS hardware available, advantages and disadvantages, performance and cost. Controlling software, remote access and control

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
LO1 Explain the operating principles of non-domestic ventilation systems			LO1 LO2 D1 Evaluate and compare a number of passive and active methods used to help cool buildings giving suitable examples
P1 Explain and compare two alternative ventilation strategies for a non-domestic building and recommend the most suitable P2 Using the information from P1, calculate the ventilation requirements for the rooms in a non-domestic building	M1 Discuss the types of fans used in non-domestic ventilation systems and analyse their characteristics		
LO2 Explore the range of air conditioning systems			
P3 Explain the requirement for air conditioning in a variety of non-domestic buildings P4 Estimate the cooling load requirements for rooms in non-domestic buildings using a recognised 'rule of thumb' method	M2 Analyse the factors affecting the cooling loads in buildings		LO3 LO4 D2 Calculate the minimum air requirements for a given fuel and distinguish between complete and incomplete combustion, predicting the possible consequences of incomplete combustion
LO3 Investigate the operational characteristics of non-domestic heating systems			
P5 Explain and compare two alternative heating strategies for a non-domestic building and recommend the most suitable	M3 Discuss the combustion properties of common fuels used in non-domestic heating systems		
P6 Estimate the heating load requirements for rooms in non-domestic buildings using a recognised 'rule of thumb' method			

Pass	Merit	Distinction
L04 Describe the role Building Management Systems (BMS) have in controlling and monitoring HVAC systems		
P7 Describe the requirements of a building management system in non-domestic buildings P8 Describe the functions performed by a building management system in a non-domestic building	M4 Evaluate the advantages of a building fitted with a full Building Management System	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

CHADDERTON, D. (2013) *Building Services Engineering*. 6th Ed. Abingdon: Routledge.

CIBSE. (2009) *CIBSE Guide H: Building control systems*. CIBSE, London.

HALL, F. and GREENO, R. (2009) *Building Services Handbook*. 5th Ed. Oxford: Elsevier.

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 63: Industrial Services

Unit code K/615/1525

Unit level 5

Credit value 15

Introduction

Behind the scenes in many modern-day manufacturing facilities there lies a complex system of services that powers production, both day and night. The underlying aim of this unit is to enhance the students' understanding of the electrical supply systems, industrial air compressors, steam services, refrigeration systems and heat pumps that are used in an array of industrial engineering environments.

This broad-based methodology reflects the fact that operations engineering encompasses many disciplines and, as such, engineers must be conversant in the wide scope of service provision. The intention is to encourage students to develop a holistic approach to the design, operation, installation and maintenance of both industrial services and operating equipment.

The student will be introduced to the fundamental principles of electrical power and lighting systems, the rudiments of industrial compressed air systems, the provision of steam for both power generation and process plant, and the applications and precepts of refrigeration plant and heat pumps.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to manage and maintain a wide range of commonly encountered industrial systems.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Apply the operating principles of electrical power and lighting systems.
2. Investigate the applications and efficiency of industrial compressors.
3. Discuss provision of steam services for process and power use.
4. Review industrial refrigeration and heat pump systems.

Essential Content

L01 **Apply the operating principles of electrical power and lighting systems**

Electrical power:

Construction, starting and speed control of polyphase induction motors

Three-phase transformers: construction, clock number and group, parallel operation

Electrical distribution: power system topologies, efficiency, power factor causes and correction, effect on cost of supplies, circuit protection

Lighting systems:

Lighting fundamentals: SI units, energy efficient circuit design and layout

L02 **Investigate the applications and efficiency of industrial compressors**

Industrial compressors:

Types and applications of industrial compressors

Role of intercoolers, dryers and air receivers

Efficiency and performance of air compressors

Hazards and faults: safety consideration and associated legislation

L03 **Discuss the provision of steam services for process and power use**

Steam power plant:

Use of tables and charts to analyse wet and dry saturated steam

Circuit diagrams showing steam raising plant

Process steam: enthalpy of evaporation, available energy

Overall plant efficiencies for process

Power steam: superheated steam, turbine efficiency, Rankine cycle, cooling towers

Overall plant efficiency for power

Efficiencies and improvements

L04 **Review industrial refrigeration and heat pump systems**

Heat pumps and refrigeration:

Typical industrial heat pump and refrigeration systems

Application of the second law of thermodynamics

Reversed heat engines: reversed Carnot cycle

Vapour compression cycle

Refrigerant fluids: environmental impact

Refrigeration tables and charts (p-h diagrams)

Coefficient of performance for heat pumps and refrigerators

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Apply the operating principles of electrical power and lighting systems		M1 Compare the economics of single-phase and three-phase distribution, and assess the methods of speed control applied to polyphase induction motors	D1 Analyse the approaches available for reducing electrical energy consumption/costs in an industrial production facility
P1 Illustrate the construction and modes of connection of three-phase transformers P2 Discuss the applications and operating characteristics of polyphase induction motors P3 Apply the principles of good lighting design to produce a lighting scheme for a given application			
L02 Investigate the applications and efficiency of industrial compressors		M2 Calculate the isothermal and polytropic work of a reciprocating compressor and thus deduce the isothermal efficiency. Explain any discrepancies	D2 Stating any assumptions, provide an explanatory derivation of the volumetric efficiency formula for a reciprocating compressor
P4 Compare three types of industrial compressor and identify justifiable applications for each P5 Review potential industrial compressor faults and hazards P6 Determine the performance characteristics of an industrial compressor			

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L03 Discuss the provision of steam services for process and power use		M3 Illustrate why the Rankine cycle is preferred over the Carnot cycle in steam production plants around the world	D3 Evaluate the modifications made to the basic steam raising systems to improve their overall efficiency
P7 Demonstrate the need for superheated steam in a power generating plant	P8 Discuss the requirements for process steam and determine overall plant efficiencies for steam process and power systems		
L04 Review industrial refrigeration and heat pump systems		M4 Assess the limiting factors that impact on the economics of heat pumps M5 Discuss the apparent contradiction between refrigeration cycles and the second law	D4 Conduct a cost-benefit analysis on the installation of a ground source heat pump on a smallholding. Present your findings in the form of academic poster/presentation
P9 Discuss the operating principles of both heat pumps and industrial refrigeration systems	P10 Calculate COP, heating effect and refrigeration effect of reversed heat engines, making use of refrigeration tables and pressure/enthalpy charts		

Recommended resources

Textbooks

CIBSE. (2002) *Code for lighting*. Butterworth-Heinemann.

DUNN, D. (2001) *Fundamental Engineering Thermodynamics*. Longman.

EASTOP, T.D. and MCCONKEY, A. (1996) *Applied Thermodynamics for Engineering Technologists*. 5th Ed. Prentice Hall.

HUGHES, A. (2013) *Electric Motors and Drives: Fundamentals, Types and Applications*. 4th Ed. Newnes.

ROGERS, G.F.C. and MAYHEW, Y.R. (1994) *Thermodynamic and Transport Properties of Fluids: S. I. Units*. 5th Ed. Wiley-Blackwell.

Websites

<http://www.freestudy.co.uk> Free Study
(Tutorials)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 13: Fundamentals of Thermodynamics and Heat Engines

Unit 38: Further Thermodynamics

Unit 64: Thermofluids

Unit 64: Thermofluids

Unit code	M/615/1526
Unit level	5
Credit value	15

Introduction

In everyday life you are never too far away from some system or device that relies on both fluid mechanics and thermodynamics. From the water circulating in your home central heating radiators to the hydraulic door closer on the back of a fire door, the presence of thermofluids is constantly around us.

The aim of this unit is to provide a rational understanding of functional thermodynamics and fluid mechanics in common industrial applications. The unit promotes a problem-based approach to solving realistic work-related quandaries such as steam plant efficiency and fluid flow capacities.

Students will examine fundamental thermodynamic principles, steam and gas turbine systems and viscosity in fluids, along with static and dynamic fluid systems. Each element of the unit will identify a variety of engineering challenges and assess how problems are overcome in real-life industrial situations.

Additionally, students will develop their perceptions of industrial thermodynamic systems, particularly those involving steam and gas turbine power. In addition, they will consider the impact of energy transfer in engineering applications along with the characteristics of fluid flow in piping systems and numerous hydraulic devices, all of which are prevalent in typical manufacturing and process facilities.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Review industrial thermodynamic systems and their properties.
2. Examine the operation of practical steam and gas turbines plants.
3. Illustrate the properties of viscosity in fluids.
4. Analyse fluid systems and hydraulic machines.

Essential Content

L01 Review industrial thermodynamic systems and their properties

Thermodynamic systems:

Power generation plant

Significance of first law of thermodynamics

Analysis of Non-Flow Energy Equation (NFEE) and Steady Flow Energy Equation (SFEE) systems

Application of thermodynamic property tables

Energy transfer systems employing polytropic processes (isothermal, adiabatic and isentropic)

Pressure/volume diagrams and the concept of work done: use of conventions

The application of the Gas Laws and polytropic laws for vapours and gases

L02 Examine the operation of practical steam and gas turbines plants

Steam and gas turbine plant:

Principles of operation of steam and gas turbine plants

Use of property diagrams to analyse plant

Characteristics of steam/gas turbine plant as used in energy supply

Energy-saving options adopted on steam plants operating on modified Rankine cycle

Performance characteristics of steam and gas power plant

Cycle efficiencies: turbine isentropic efficiencies and overall relative efficiency

L03 Illustrate the effects of viscosity in fluids

Viscosity in fluids:

Viscosity: shear stress, shear rate, dynamic viscosity, kinematic viscosity

Viscosity measurement: operating principles of viscosity measuring devices e.g. falling sphere, U-tube, rotational and orifice viscometers (such as Redwood)

Newtonian fluids and non-Newtonian fluids: pseudoplastic, Bingham plastic, Casson plastic and dilatant fluids

O4 **Analyse fluid systems and hydraulic machines**

Fluid systems:

Characteristics of fluid flow: laminar and turbulent flow, Reynolds number

Friction factors: relative roughness of pipe, use of Moody diagrams

Head losses across various industrial pipe fittings and valves, use of Bernoulli's Equation and Darcy's Formula

Hydraulic machines:

Turbines: Pelton wheel, Kaplan turbine, Francis wheel

Pumps: centrifugal, reciprocating

Analysis of systems:

Dimensional analysis: verification of equations for torque, power and flow rate

Application of dimensional analysis to determine the characteristics of a scale model

Use of Buckingham Pi Theorem

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
L01 Review industrial thermodynamic systems and their properties			D1 Analyse an operational industrial thermodynamic system in terms of work done
P1 Discuss the operation of industrial thermodynamic systems and their properties	P2 Describe the application of the first law of thermodynamics to industrial systems	M1 Determine the index of compression in polytrophic processes	
P3 Illustrate the relationships between system constants for a perfect gas			
L02 Examine the operation of practical steam and gas turbines plants			D2 Evaluate the modifications made to the basic Rankine cycle to improve the overall efficiency of steam power plants
P4 Explain the principles of operation of steam turbine plant	P5 Calculate overall steam turbine plant efficiencies by the use of charts and/or tables	M2 Justify why the Rankine cycle is preferred over the Carnot cycle in steam production plants around the world	
P6 Discuss the principles of operation of gas turbine plants			
L03 Illustrate the effects of viscosity in fluids			D3 Compare the results of a viscosity test on a Newtonian fluid with that which is given on a data sheet and explain any discrepancies
P7 Illustrate the properties of viscosity in fluids	P8 Explore three viscosity measurement techniques	M3 Evaluate the effects of shear force on Newtonian and non-Newtonian fluids	

Pass	Merit	Distinction
LO4 Analyse fluid systems and hydraulic machines		D4 Evaluate the use of dimensionless analysis using the Buckingham Pi Theorem for a given industrial application
<p>P9 Examine the characteristics of fluid flow in industrial piping systems</p> <p>P10 Discuss the operational aspects of hydraulic machines</p> <p>P11 Apply dimensional analysis to fluid flow</p>	M4 Review the significance of the Reynolds number on fluid flow in a given system	

Recommended resources

Textbooks

DUNN, D. (2001) *Fundamental Engineering Thermodynamics*. Longman.

EASTOP, T.D. and MCCONKEY, A. (1996) *Applied Thermodynamics for Engineering Technologists*. 5th Ed. Prentice Hall.

MASSEY, B.S. and WARD-SMITH, J. (2011) *Mechanics of Fluids*. 9th Ed. Oxford: Spon Press.

ROGERS, G.F.C and MAYHEW, Y.R (1994) *Thermodynamic and Transport Properties of Fluids: S. I. Units*. 5th Ed. Wiley-Blackwell.

Websites

http://www.freestudy.co.uk	Free Study (Tutorials)
---	---------------------------

http://www.khanacademy.org	Khan Academy (Tutorials)
---	-----------------------------

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 11: Fluid Mechanics

Unit 29: Electro, Pneumatic and Hydraulic Systems

Unit 13: Fundamentals of Thermodynamics and Heat Engines

Unit 73: Materials Engineering with Polymers

Unit code K/616/2556

Unit level 4

Credit value 15

Introduction

This unit will provide students with the necessary background knowledge and understanding of the structure and property relationship of polymer materials to guide their selection of material and manufacturing techniques to produce a sustainable, fit for purpose product.

Polymer products are driving innovation and research around the world and are predicted to expand further to replace traditional engineering materials in a wide variety of applications. Students will be made aware of the wide range of polymer materials at their disposal and the opportunity for using the new grades that are being developed on a daily basis.

This unit will provide students with an understanding of the relationship between a polymer's structure and properties and between processing technique and product performance. The ability to determine a polymer's properties is crucial and this unit will include a review and practical application of the main testing techniques. One of the most important skills for a manufacturing engineer is the ability to distinguish between different types of polymers. This will be developed during practical sessions that will provide students with the opportunity to carry out preliminary investigations and simple identification tests. This will be supported by an overview of the main types of polymer materials.

Inadequate consideration of a specific behavioural requirement can lead to product failure and reduced service life. This will be addressed by providing techniques for material modification and learning how to use data sources for material selection. In addition this unit will consider environmental concerns and offer solutions to reduce waste and improve sustainability.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit a student will be able to:

1. Examine how the fundamental aspects of the molecular structure and morphology of polymers affect their processing and performance properties
2. Distinguish between the main types of polymer materials to inform the selection of a polymer material for a given application
3. Determine how to select, modify, compound or adapt polymer material systems for a specific engineering application
4. Recognise the limitations of polymer behaviour and potential solutions to environmental concerns associated with polymers

Essential Content

LO1 **Examine how the fundamental aspects of the molecular structure and morphology of polymers affect their processing and performance properties**

Introduction

polymer concept

definition of the main terms, e.g. monomer, repeating units

classification of polymers (natural, synthetic, organic, inorganic)

Molecular Structure

structure of polyethylene chain

chain length and molar mass;

molar mass distribution;

calculations of number (average molar mass and weight-average molar mass)

significance of molar mass to processing and performance properties of polymers

configuration of the chain molecule

confirmation of the chain molecule

secondary bonds between chain molecules

cohesion

adhesion

solubility

compatibility of polymer blends

Polymer morphology

aggregational states of matter

amorphous solid state

amorphous polymers

glass transition temperature and its significance to processing and service life

crystalline polymers

melting temperature, conditions for crystallinity, effect of processing on crystallinity, morphological features (lamellae and spherulites)

L02 Distinguish between the main types of polymer materials to inform the selection of a polymer material for a given application

Commodity and engineering thermoplastics

e.g. polyethylenes

modified polyethylenes; polypropylene

polyamides and aramids (overview of structure, properties and processability)

Thermosets

e.g. epoxies

phenolics; polyesters

material storage

concept of gel-point

quantitative analysis of cross-linking (overview of structure, properties and processability)

Rubber and elastomers

e.g. natural rubber (NR)

acrylonitrile butadiene rubber (NBR); styrene butadiene rubber (SBR), butyl rubber (BR), polychloroprene rubber (CR), ethylene propylene rubber (EPR)

introduction to vulcanisation and compounding

overview of structure, properties and processability

Introduction to simple identification tests and techniques

e.g. density, solubility

L03 Determine how to select, modify, compound or adapt polymer material systems for a specific engineering application

Criteria for material selection

definitions of material properties and characteristics

material selection flow chart

overview of selection methods e.g. structured and unstructured data; material selection charts

Material testing to determine the properties of polymers

mechanical e.g. tensile, flexural, impact

optical (colour)

electrical (conductivity/resistivity)

thermal (melting temperature, glass transition temperature)

rheological

Data sources

published data e.g. British standards, ISO, material's data sheet, IT sources, standard published data sources, manufacturers' literature

assessment of data reliability

Polymer modification

review of polymer additives and their functions

consideration of their cost and quantity in a compound formulation e.g. fillers, plasticisers, stabilisers, flame retardants, blowing agents, colourants, cross-linking and vulcanising agents

LO4 Recognise the limitations of polymer behaviour and potential solutions to environmental concerns associated with polymers

Premature failure of polymer products

causes of failure in polymer products e.g. visco-elastic and time-dependent behaviour of polymers, brittle and ductile failure, impact failure, creep rupture and fatigue failure, environmental effects

contributory effects of service conditions to failure e.g. faults in design and manufacture, inappropriate use, changes to service conditions such as load, time, temperature and environment

Solutions to environmental concerns

overview of relevant Government policies and Directives

acceptable waste management and disposal techniques e.g. re-use, mechanical recycling of single and mixed polymers

feedstock recycling to produce monomers, oligomers and chemical raw materials energy recovery

re-processing of polymers and its effect on processing and mechanical properties stabilisation of polymers to prevent weathering, chemical and thermal degradation

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
LO1 Examine how the fundamental aspects of the molecular structure and morphology of polymers affect their processing and performance properties			LO1 and 2 D1 Justify the selection of a polymer material for a given engineering application through critical analysis of its structure and properties
P1 Explain how the structure and morphology of different given polymer materials affect their processing and performance properties	M1 Calculate the molar mass of a given polymer sample, commenting on the significance of the results to processing and performance properties		
LO2 Distinguish between the main types of polymer materials to inform the selection of a polymer material for a given application			
P2 Use preliminary investigations and simple identification tests to distinguish between different types of polymer materials	M2 Apply structural considerations to compare and contrast the properties and processability of these polymer materials		
LO3 Determine how to select, modify, compound or adapt polymer material systems for a specific engineering application			LO3 and 4 D2 Critically evaluate test results to justify selection of the most suitable additive or acceptable amount of recycled material in a given product
P3 Identify the required properties for a specified engineering product P4 Evaluate data sheets to select the most appropriate materials and processing techniques for the engineering product	M3 Re-examine data sheets to extend the range of selected materials by proposing a suitable modification to the base material		

Pass	Merit	Distinction
<p>L04 Recognise the limitations of polymer behaviour and potential solutions to environmental concerns associated with polymers</p>		
<p>P5 Explain the common causes of premature failure of polymer products</p> <p>P6 Explain how polymer materials can be safely disposed or recovered through acceptable waste management techniques</p>	<p>M4 Give consideration to the contributory effects of service conditions in a given product and make recommendations to prevent failure</p> <p>M5 For a given product/ evaluate the potential benefit of using recycled material in place of virgin material</p>	

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

ASHBY, M.F. and JONES, D.R.H. (2013) *Engineering Materials 2: An Introduction to Microstructures and Processing*. 4th Ed. Amsterdam: Butterworth-Heinemann.

ASHBY, M.F. and JONES, D.R.H. (2012) *Engineering Materials 1: An Introduction to Properties, Applications, and Design*. 4th Ed. Amsterdam-Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann.

BRAUN, D. (2013) *Simple Methods for Identification of Plastics*. 5th Ed. Munich: Hanser.

CALLISTER, W. and RETHWISCH, D.G. (2015) *Fundamentals of Materials Science and Engineering: An Integrated Approach*. 5th Ed. Hoboken: Wiley.

LA MANTIA, F. (2002) *Handbook of Plastics Recycling*. Shrewsbury: Rapra Technology Limited.

McCRUM, N.G., BUCKLEY, C.P. and BUCKNALL, C.B. (2003) *Principles of Polymer Engineering*. 2nd Ed. Oxford: Oxford Univ. Press.

OSSWALD, T.A. and MENGES, G. (2012) *Material Science of Polymers for Engineers*. 3rd Ed. Munich: Hanser.

YOUNG, R.J. and LOVELL, P.A. (2011) *Introduction to Polymers*. Boca Raton: CRC Press.

Websites

www.bpf.co.uk	British Plastics Federation (General reference)
www.iom3.org/polymer-society	The Polymer Society (General reference)
www.cia.org.uk	Chemical Industries Association (General reference)
www.cogent-ssc.com	Cogent – Sector Skills Council (General reference)
www.stemnet.org.uk	Network for Science, Technology, Engineering and Maths Network Ambassadors Scheme (General reference)

Essential Resources

Tensometer (to evaluate tensile properties of materials, such as Young's modulus)

Pendulum impact tester

Hardness tester

Controlled laboratory area for flammable tests on polymers

Unit 74: Polymer Manufacturing Processes

Unit code	M/616/2557
Unit level	4
Credit value	15

Introduction

This unit is designed to develop students' knowledge and understanding of the main manufacturing processes and techniques that can be applied to a wide range of polymer materials for a variety of manufacturing applications.

It is essential for a manufacturing engineer who may lead the planning, operation and management of their company's manufacturing systems to have a broad underpinning knowledge of conventional polymer manufacturing processes. Polymer materials have the capacity and potential to be processed into a huge variety of shapes and forms for a wide range of applications.

The first outcome of this unit provides background knowledge of the main principles of polymer flow and heat transfer relevant to processing. The second and third outcomes give a detailed overview of the conventional manufacturing techniques of polymers (extrusion, blow moulding, thermoforming and injection moulding) considering relevant equipment and processing steps. The final outcome provides the context to inform selection of the most suitable method of processing for a given application.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit a student will be able to:

1. Relate the fundamental principles of polymer flow and heat transfer to polymer processing
2. Illustrate the variety of polymer processing and shaping techniques available to manufacture a wide range of engineering components and products
3. Describe the main technical components of commonly used polymer processing equipment, their functions and the main operational steps
4. Determine from a design perspective the most suitable manufacturing process for a given engineering component or product.

Essential Content

L01 **Relate the fundamental principles of polymer flow and heat transfer to polymer processing**

Polymer melt behaviour

Elongational flow

Shear flow

Shear stress and shear strain

Determination of apparent viscosity

Dependence of apparent viscosity on temperature and relative molecular mass

Shear thinning behaviour of polymers

Viscoelasticity of polymer melt

Die swell

Flow in a capillary tube (equations for stress and shear rate)

Melt flow index test (MFI)

Effect of heating and heat transfer in polymers

Temperature-dependent behaviour of polymers

Conduction (heat conduction equation, thermal conductivity, thermal diffusivity) convection

Radiation

Comparison of heat transfer properties of polymers to other competitive materials e.g. Metals, ceramics, wood

L02 **Illustrate the variety of polymer processing and shaping techniques available to manufacture a wide range of engineering components and products**

Overview of processing techniques for thermoplastics

Extrusion e.g. Sheet production, pipe production, blown film, wire and cable coating, co-extrusion

Injection moulding, injection blow moulding

Rotational moulding

Thermoforming

Consideration of materials and products

Overview of processing techniques for thermosets:

E.g. Compression moulding and injection moulding

Specific requirements to process thermosets

Consideration of materials and products

Overview of shaping and processing techniques for rubber and elastomers:

E.g. Extrusion, compression moulding and injection moulding

Compounding principle

Consideration of materials and products

LO3 Describe the main technical components of commonly used polymer processing equipment, their functions and the main operational steps

Extrusion

The principle of the extrusion process

Extrusion line

Main components of extruder and their functions e.g. Hopper, screw, motor and gearing, breaker plate and screen pack, die, temperature control system

Single and twin-screw extruders

Die design and processing faults

Injection moulding

The principle of the injection moulding process

Components of injection moulding machine and their functions e.g. Clamping unit, injection unit, mould, machine bed and control unit

Process sequence

Common injection moulding faults and remedies

Thermoforming

The principle of the thermoforming process

Process components e.g. Clamp frame, heating systems, moulds

Selected thermoforming methods e.g. Female mould forming, male mould forming, plug assist forming, prestretch forming

Wall thickness and molecular orientation in thermoformed products

L04 Determine from a design perspective the most suitable manufacturing process for a given engineering component or product

Design consideration and application development process

Identifying the end-use requirements after considering the product functions

Part geometry e.g shape, size, tolerances

Material selection

Flow analysis and the significant implications of process selection stage

Prototyping and testing

Design for mouldability

E.g. Viscosity, melt temperature, shrinkage, cooling requirements, selection of optimum processing conditions

Tooling consideration

Design for appearance e.g. Preventing weld lines, gate marks in injection moulded components

Design for precision e.g. Gate location, gate type, gate size, die design, cooling lines

Consideration of production volumes and cost of manufacturing

Relevant case studies

Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

Pass		Merit	Distinction
LO1 Relate the fundamental principles of polymer flow and heat transfer to polymer processing			LO1 and LO2 D1 Critically evaluate the effect of temperature and relative molecular mass on viscosity and hence, processing
P1 Explain the differences between the types of flow apparent in polymer melt and their relevance to processing P2 Explain the difference in heat transfer between polymers and alternative materials and the effect it has on processing	M1 Calculate polymer flow and heat transfer parameters for different grades of a thermoplastic material, commenting on the significance of the results for polymer processing		
LO2 Illustrate the variety of polymer processing and shaping techniques available to manufacture a wide range of engineering components and products			
P3 Describe a manufacturing set-up for given products and materials	M2 Compare and contrast a range of alternative processing and shaping techniques for a given product/application		D2 Justify the most suitable manufacturing process for a given engineering product
LO3 Describe the main technical components of commonly used polymer processing equipment, their functions and the main operational steps			
P4 Define the main differences between extrusion, injection moulding and thermoforming in terms of their components, functions and process sequence	M3 Analyse potential process-related faults for a given product or application		D3 Critically evaluate the cost effectiveness of the selected manufacturing process
LO4 Determine from a design perspective the most suitable manufacturing process for a given engineering component or product			
P5 Determine functions, shape and material for a given component/product and recommend the most appropriate manufacturing process based on the component's or product's functions, shape and material	M4 Justify specific tooling for a given component or product		

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

BAIRD, D.G. and COLLIAS, D.I. (2014) *Polymer Processing: Principles and Design*. 2nd Ed. New Jersey: Wiley.

LEE, N.C. (2007) *Understanding Blow Molding*. 2nd Ed. Munich: Hanser.

OSSWALD, T.A. (2011) *Understanding Polymer Processing: Processes and Governing Equations*. Munich: Hanser Publishers.

RAO, N.S. and SCHUMACHER, G. (2004) *Design Formulas for Plastics Engineers*. Munich: Hanser.

RAUWENDAAL, C. (2014) *Polymer Extrusion*. 5th Ed. Munich: Hanser Publications.

THRONE, J.L. (2008) *Understanding Thermoforming*. 2nd Ed. Munich: Hanser.

Websites

www.bpf.co.uk

British Plastics Federation
(General reference)

www.iom3.org/polymer-society

The Polymer Society
(General reference)

www.cia.org.uk

Chemical Industries Association
(General reference)

www.cogent-ssc.com

Cogent – Sector Skills Council

www.stemnet.org.uk

(General reference)
Network for Science, Technology,
Engineering and Maths – Network
Ambassadors Scheme

Essential Resources

Laboratory Micro Injection Moulder Filament Extrusion line

Vacuum former

Melt Flow tester

Laboratory balance

11. Appendices

Appendix 1: Mapping of HND in Engineering against FHEQ Level 5

Key	
KU	Knowledge and Understanding
CS	Cognitive Skills
AS	Applied Skills
TS	Transferable Skills

The qualification will be awarded to students who have demonstrated:

FHEQ Level 5 descriptor		Engineering HND Programme Outcome
Knowledge and critical understanding of the well-established principles of their area(s) of study, and of the way in which those principles have developed.	KU1	Knowledge and understanding of the fundamentals principles and practices of the contemporary global engineering industry.
	KU2	Knowledge and understanding of the external engineering environment and its impact upon local, national and global levels of strategy, behaviour, management and sustainability.
	KU3	Understanding and insight into different engineering practices, their diverse nature, purposes, structures and operations and their influence upon the external environment.
	KU4	A critical understanding of the ethical, environmental, legal, regulatory, professional and operational frameworks within which engineering operates.
	KU5	A critical understanding of process, practices and techniques for effective management of products, processes, services and people.
	KU6	A critical understanding of the evolving concepts, theories and models within the study of engineering across the range of operational alternatives.
	KU7	An ability to evaluate and analyse a range of concepts and theories, models and techniques to make appropriate engineering operational and management decisions.

FHEQ Level 5 descriptor		Engineering HND Programme Outcome
	KU8	An appreciation of the concepts and principles of CPD, staff development, team dynamics, leadership and reflective practice as strategies for personal and people development.
	KU9	Knowledge and understanding of how the key areas of engineering and the environment it operates within influence the development of people and businesses.
	KU10	An understanding of the skills, techniques and methodologies used to resolve problems in the workplace.
	KU11	Knowledge and understanding of the human-machine interaction to inform the development of good design and fitness for purpose.

FHEQ Level 5 descriptor		Engineering HND Programme Outcome
Ability to apply underlying concepts and principles outside the context in which they were first studied, including, where appropriate, the application of those principles in an employment context.	CS1	Apply knowledge and understanding of essential concepts, principles and models within the contemporary global engineering industry.
	AS1	Evidence the ability to show customer relationship management skills and develop appropriate policies and strategies to meet stakeholder expectations.
	AS2	Apply innovative engineering ideas to design and develop new products or services that respond to the changing nature of the engineering industry and the global market.
	AS3	Integrate theory and practice through the investigation, evaluation and development of practices and products in the workplace.
	AS4	Develop outcomes for customers using appropriate practices and data to make justified recommendations.
	CS2	Develop different strategies and methods to show how resources (human, financial, environmental and information) are integrated and effectively managed to successfully meet objectives.
Knowledge of the main methods of enquiry in the subject(s) relevant to the named award, and ability to evaluate critically the appropriateness of different approaches to solving problems in the field of study.	CS3	Critically evaluate current principles and operational practices used within the engineering industry as applied to problem-solving.
	CS4	Apply project management skills and techniques for reporting, planning, control and problem-solving.
	CS5	Recognise and critically evaluate the professional, economic, social, environmental and ethical issues that influence the sustainable exploitation of people, resources and businesses.
	CS6	Critique a range of engineering information technology systems and operations and their application to maximise and successfully meet strategic objectives.
	KU12	An ability to deploy processes, principles, theories, skills and techniques to analyse, specify, build and evaluate processes and outcomes.

FHEQ Level 5 descriptor		Engineering HND Programme Outcome
An understanding of the limits of their knowledge, and how this influences analysis and interpretations based on that knowledge.	TS1	Develop a skill-set to enable the evaluation of appropriate actions taken for problem-solving in specific engineering contexts
	TS2	Develop self-reflection, including self-awareness, to become an effective self-managing student, appreciating the value and importance of the self-reflection process.
	TS3	Undertake independent learning to expand on own skills and delivered content.

Typically, holders of the qualification will be able to:

c		Engineering HND Programme Outcomes
Use a range of established techniques to initiate and undertake critical analysis of information, and to propose solutions to problems arising from that analysis.	TS4	Competently use digital literacy to access a broad range of research sources, data and information.
	CS7	Interpret, analyse and evaluate a range of engineering data, sources and information to inform evidence-based decision-making.
	CS8	Synthesise knowledge and critically evaluate strategies and plans to understand the relationship between theory and actual world engineering situations.
Effectively communicate information, arguments and analysis in a variety of forms to specialist and non-specialist audiences, and deploy key techniques of the discipline effectively.	TS5	Communicate confidently and effectively, both orally and in writing both internally and externally with engineering professionals and other stakeholders.
	TS6	Demonstrate strong interpersonal skills, including effective listening and oral communication skills, as well as the associated ability to persuade, present, pitch and negotiate.

FHEQ Level 5 descriptor		Engineering HND Programme Outcome
Undertake further training, develop existing skills and acquire new competences that will enable them to assume significant responsibility within organisations.	TS7	Identify personal and professional goals for continuing professional development in order to enhance competence to practice within a chosen engineering field.
	TS8	Take advantage of available pathways for continuing professional development through Higher Education and Professional Body Qualifications.

Holders will also have:

FHEQ Level 5 descriptor		Engineering HND Programme Outcomes
The qualities and transferable skills necessary for employment requiring the exercise of personal responsibility and decision-making.	TS9	Develop a range of skills to ensure effective team working, project and time management, independent initiatives, organisational competence and problem-solving strategies.
	TS10	Reflect adaptability and flexibility in approach to engineering; showing resilience under pressure and meeting challenging targets within given deadlines.
	TS11	Use quantitative skills to manipulate data, evaluate and verify existing theory.
	CS9	Evaluate the changing needs of the engineering industry and have the confidence to self-evaluate and undertake additional CPD as necessary.
	TS12	Develop emotional intelligence and sensitivity to diversity in relation to people, cultures and environments.
	TS13	Show awareness of current developments within the engineering industry and their impact on employability and CPD.

Appendix 2: HNC/HND Engineering Programme Outcomes for Learners

	Knowledge and Understanding											Cognitive skills									Applied skills				Transferable skills												
Unit	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	
1	X			X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	
2	X											X						X					X		X			X									
3	X											X						X					X		X			X									
4	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X													X	X		X		X				X	X	X	X	X	X
5	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X			X	X	X	X
6	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X			X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X						X	X
7	X	X	X								X	X	X					X							X												
8	X																						X														
9	X									X								X					X		X			X									
10	X											X						X					X		X												
11	X																						X														
12	X									X													X		X												
13	X	X	X	X	X	X	X									X	X					X			X							X		X	X	X	
14	X											X						X					X		X		X										

	Knowledge and Understanding										Cognitive skills								Applied skills				Transferable skills															
15	X					X	X									X								X														
16	X			X	X										X	X										X						X						
17	X															X								X		X						X						
18	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X					X	X				X	X	X	X		X						X						X

	Knowledge and Understanding											Cognitive skills									Applied skills				Transferable skills											
Unit	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
19	X	X	X		X	X	X		X	X															X							X		X		X
20	X																						X				X				X		X			
21	X											X											X	X										X		
22	X																X											X						X		
23	X	X	X				X				X		X											X	X			X				X		X		X
24	X											X											X	X										X		
25	X																	X																X		
26	X											X											X	X										X		
27	X																							X	X									X		
28	X											X											X											X		
29	X											X						X																X		
30	X	X	X		X		X			X							X						X		X							X	X	X		
31	X											X			X			X					X		X	X		X				X		X		X
32	X	X	X				X				X		X				X	X						X		X		X				X		X		X
33	X	X	X				X				X		X				X	X						X		X		X				X		X		X
34	X	X	X	X	X	X	X					X																						X		X
35	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X		X	X	X	X	X	X

	Knowledge and Understanding										Cognitive skills								Applied skills				Transferable skills															
36	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		x			x	x	x	x	x		x	x		x	x	x	x	x		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
37	x						x					x									x															x		x
38	x	x	x			x	x				x												x			x					x		x					
39	x										x						x				x			x												x		

	Knowledge and Understanding											Cognitive skills									Applied skills				Transferable skills												
Unit	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	
40	X											X						X					X		X			X						X			
41	X																	X										X						X		X	
42	X													X								X	X											X			
43	X																	X										X							X		
44	X													X								X	X											X			
45	X						X											X										X							X		
46	X					X																						X							X		
47	X																	X				X	X											X			
48	X											X																X							X		
49	X	X	X		X	X	X												X		X	X	X	X								X		X		X	
50	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X		X		X				X		X	X	X	X					X	X		X		X		X	
51	X	X	X		X	X	X						X		X	X			X				X											X		X	
52	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X			X	X		X	X		X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X			X			X	X	X	X	
53	X											X						X					X					X						X			
54	X	X	X		X	X	X																X		X									X			
55	X											X		X				X																X			
56	X											X						X					X					X						X			
57	X											X											X					X						X			

	Knowledge and Understanding										Cognitive skills								Applied skills				Transferable skills																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																		
58	X										X											X																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																			

Appendix 3: Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering: mapping of transferable employability and academic study skills

Skill Sets	Cognitive skills							Intra-personal Skills				Interpersonal Skills		
	Problem Solving	Critical Thinking/ Analysis	Decision Making	Effective Communication	Digital Literacy	Numeracy	Creativity	Plan Prioritise	Self Management	Independent learning	Self Reflection	Team Work	Leadership	Cultural Awareness
1	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
2	X	X		X	X	X			X	X				
3	X	X		X	X	X			X	X				
4	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
5	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X			X
6	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X		X		X
7	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		
8	X						X	X	X	X	X			
9	X	X		X	X	X			X	X				
10	X	X	X		X	X		X	X	X				
11	X						X	X	X	X	X			
12	X	X		X	X	X			X	X				
13	X	X	X	X				X	X	X	X	X	X	X
14	X	X		X	X	X			X	X				

Skill Sets	Cognitive skills							Intra-personal Skills				Interpersonal Skills		
	Problem Solving	Critical Thinking/ Analysis	Decision Making	Effective Communication	Digital Literacy	Numeracy	Creativity	Plan Prioritise	Self Management	Independent learning	Self Reflection	Team Work	Leadership	Cultural Awareness
15	X						X	X	X	X	X			
16	X	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X			
17	X	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X			
18	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
19	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X		
20	X	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X			
21	X	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X			
22	X	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X			
23	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		
24	X	X			X	X				X	X			
25	X	X			X	X				X	X			
26	X	X			X	X				X	X			
27	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X			
28	X	X			X	X				X	X			
29	X	X		X	X	X			X	X				
30	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
31	X	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X			
32	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		
33	X	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X	X		

Skill Sets	Cognitive skills							Intra-personal Skills				Interpersonal Skills		
	Problem Solving	Critical Thinking/ Analysis	Decision Making	Effective Communication	Digital Literacy	Numeracy	Creativity	Plan Prioritise	Self Management	Independent learning	Self Reflection	Team Work	Leadership	Cultural Awareness
34	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X			X
35	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
36	X	X			X	X		X	X	X	X			
37	X	X			X	X		X	X	X	X			
38	X	X			X	X		X	X	X	X			
39	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X			
40	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		
41	X	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X			
42	X	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X			
43	X	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X			
44	X	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X			
45	X	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X			
46	X	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X			
47	X	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X			
48	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
49	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
50	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
51	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	

Skill Sets	Cognitive skills							Intra-personal Skills				Interpersonal Skills		
	Problem Solving	Critical Thinking/ Analysis	Decision Making	Effective Communication	Digital Literacy	Numeracy	Creativity	Plan Prioritise	Self Management	Independent learning	Self Reflection	Team Work	Leadership	Cultural Awareness
52	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
53	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
54	X	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X			
55	X	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X			
56	X	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X			
57	X	X			X	X		X	X	X	X			
58	X	X			X	X		X	X	X	X			
59	X	X			X	X		X	X	X	X			
60	X	X			X	X		X	X	X	X			
61	X	X			X	X		X	X	X	X			
62	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X		
63	X	X			X	X		X	X	X	X			
64	X	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X	X		
65	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X		X
66	X	X		X	X	X			X	X				
67	X	X			X	X		X	X	X	X	X		
68	X	X			X	X		X	X	X	X	X		
69	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		

Skill Sets	Cognitive skills							Intra-personal Skills				Interpersonal Skills			
Unit	Problem Solving	Critical Thinking/ Analysis	Decision Making	Effective Communication	Digital Literacy	Numeracy	Creativity	Plan Prioritise	Self Management	Independent learning	Self Reflection	Team Work	Leadership	Cultural Awareness	Interpersonal Skills
70	X	X			X	X		X	X	X	X	X			
71	X	X			X	X		X	X	X	X	X			
72	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X				
73	X	X	X			X				X	X				
74	X	X	X	X		X				X					

Appendix 4: Glossary of command verbs used for internally assessed units

This is a summary of the key terms used to define the requirements within units.

Term	Definition
Analyse	<p>Present the outcome of methodical and detailed examination either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • breaking down a theme, topic or situation in order to interpret and study the interrelationships between the parts; and/or • of information or data to interpret and study key trends and interrelationships. <p>Analysis can be through activity, practice, written or verbal presentation.</p>
Apply	<p>Put into operation or use.</p> <p>Use relevant skills/knowledge/understanding appropriate to context.</p>
Arrange	Organise or make plans.
Assess	Offer a reasoned judgement of the standard/quality of a situation or a skill informed by relevant facts.
Calculate	Generate a numerical answer with workings shown.
Compare	<p>Identify the main factors relating to two or more items/situations or aspects of a subject that is extended to explain the similarities, differences, advantages and disadvantages.</p> <p>This is used to show depth of knowledge through selection of characteristics.</p>
Compose	Create or make up or form.
Communicate	<p>Convey ideas or information to others.</p> <p>Create/construct Skills to make or do something, for example a display or set of accounts.</p>
Create/Construct	Skills to make or do something, for example a display or set of accounts.
Critically analyse	Separate information into components and identify characteristics with depth to the justification.
Critically evaluate	Make a judgement taking into account different factors and using available knowledge/experience/evidence where the judgement is supported in depth.
Define	State the nature, scope or meaning.
Describe	Give an account, including all the relevant characteristics, qualities and events.

Discuss	Consider different aspects of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • a theme or topic; • how they interrelate; and • the extent to which they are important.
Demonstrate	Show knowledge and understanding.
Design	Plan and present ideas to show the layout/function/workings/object/system/ Process.
Determine	To conclude or ascertain by research and calculation.
Develop	Grow or progress a plan, ideas, skills and understanding.
Differentiate	Recognise or determine what makes something different.
Discuss	Give an account that addresses a range of ideas and arguments
Evaluate	Work draws on varied information, themes or concepts to consider aspects, such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • strengths or weaknesses • advantages or disadvantages • alternative actions • relevance or significance Students' inquiries should lead to a supported judgement showing relationship to its context. This will often be in a conclusion. Evidence will often be written but could be through presentation or activity.
Explain	To give an account of the purposes or reasons.
Explore	Skills and/or knowledge involving practical research or testing.
Identify	Indicate the main features or purpose of something by recognising it and/or being able to discern and understand facts or qualities.
Illustrate	Make clear by using examples or provide diagrams.
Indicate	Point out, show.
Interpret	State the meaning, purpose or qualities of something through the use of images, words or other expression.
Investigate	Conduct an inquiry or study into something to discover and examine facts and information.
Justify	Students give reasons or evidence to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • support an opinion; or • show something to be right or reasonable.
Outline	Set out the main points/characteristics.
Plan	Consider, set out and communicate what is to be done.

Produce	To bring into existence.
Reconstruct	To assemble again/reorganise/form an impression.
Report	Adhere to protocols, codes and conventions where, findings or judgements are set down in an objective way.
Review	Make a formal assessment of work produced. The assessment allows students to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • appraise existing information or prior events • reconsider information with the intention of making changes, if necessary.
Show how	Demonstrate the application of certain methods/theories/concepts.
Stage & Manage	Organisation and management skills, for example running an event or a business pitch.
State	Express.
Suggest	Give possible alternatives, produce an idea, put forward, e.g. an idea or plan, for consideration.
Undertake/Carry Out	Undertake/carry out. Use a range of skills to perform a task, research or activity.

This is a key summary of the types of evidence used for BTEC Higher Nationals:

Type of evidence	Definition
Case study	A specific example to which all students must select and apply knowledge.
Project	A large scale activity requiring self-direction of selection of outcome, planning, research, exploration, outcome and review.
Independent research	An analysis of substantive research organised by the student from secondary sources and, if applicable, primary sources.
Written task or report	Individual completion of a task in a work-related format, e.g. a report, marketing communication, set of instructions, giving information.
Simulated activity/ role play	A multi-faceted activity mimicking realistic work situations.
Team task	Students work together to show skills in defining and structuring activity as a team.
Presentation	Oral or through demonstration.
Production of plan/business plan	Students produce a plan as an outcome related to a given or limited task.
Reflective journal	Completion of a journal from work experience, detailing skills acquired for employability.
Poster/leaflet	Documents providing well-presented information for a given purpose.

Appendix 5: Assessment Methods and Techniques for Higher Nationals

Assessment Technique	Description	Transferable Skills Development	Formative or Summative
Academic graphic display	This technique asks students to create documents providing well-presented information for a given purpose. Could be hard or soft copy.	Creativity	Formative
		Written Communication	Summative
		Information and Communications Technology	
		Literacy	
Case Study	This technique present students with a specific example to which they must select and apply knowledge.	Reasoning	Formative
		Critical Thinking	Summative
		Analysis	
Discussion Forum	This technique allows students to express their understanding and perceptions about topics and questions presented in the class or digitally, for example online groups, blogs.	Oral/written Communication	Formative
		Appreciation of Diversity	
		Critical Thinking and Reasoning	
		Argumentation	
Examination	This technique covers all assessment that needs to be done within a centre-specified time constrained period on-site. Some units may be more suited to an exam-based assessment approach, to appropriately prepare students for further study such as progression on to Level 6 programmes or to meet professional recognition requirements.	Reasoning	Summative
		Analysis	
		Written Communication	
		Critical Thinking	
		Interpretation	
Independent Research	This technique is an analysis of research organised by the student from secondary sources and, if applicable, primary sources.	Information and Communications Technology	Formative
		Literacy	
		Analysis	
Oral/Viva	This technique asks students to display their knowledge of the subject via questioning.	Oral Communication	Summative
		Critical Thinking	
		Reasoning	

Assessment Technique	Description	Transferable Skills Development	Formative or Summative
Peer Review	This technique asks students to provide feedback on each other's performance. This feedback can be collated for development purposes.	Teamwork	Formative
		Negotiation	Summative
		Collaboration	
Presentation	This technique asks students to deliver a project orally or through demonstration.	Oral Communication	Formative
		Creativity	Summative
		Critical Thinking	
		Reasoning	
Production of an Artefact/Performance or Portfolio	This technique requires students to demonstrate that they have mastered skills and competencies by producing something. Some examples are project plans, using a piece of equipment or a technique, building models, developing, interpreting, and using maps.	Creativity	Summative
		Interpretation	
		Written and oral Communication	
		Decision-making	
		Initiative	
		Information and Communications	
		Technology	
		Literacy, etc.	
Project	This technique is a large-scale activity requiring self-direction, planning, research, exploration, outcome and review.	Written Communication	Summative
		Information Literacy	
		Creativity	
		Initiative	
Role Playing	This technique is a type of case study, in which there is an explicit situation established, with students playing specific roles, understanding what they would say or do in that situation.	Written and Oral Communication	Formative
		Leadership	
		Information Literacy	
		Creativity	
		Initiative	

Assessment Technique	Description	Transferable Skills Development	Formative or Summative
Self-reflection	This technique asks students to reflect on their performance, for example, to write statements of their personal goals for the course at the beginning of the course, what they have learned at the end of the course and their assessment of their performance and contribution; completion of a reflective journal from work experience, detailing skills acquired for employability.	Self-reflection	Summative
		Written Communication	
		Initiative	
		Decision-making	
		Critical Thinking	
Simulated Activity	This technique is a multi-faceted activity based on realistic work situations.	Self-reflection	Formative
		Critical Thinking	Summative
		Initiative	
		Decision-making	
		Written Communication	
Team Assessment	This technique asks students to work together to show skills in defining and structuring an activity as a team. All team assessment should be distributed equally, each of the group members performing their role, and then the team collates the outcomes, and submits it as a single piece of work.	Collaboration	Formative
		Teamwork	Summative
		Leadership	
		Negotiation	
		Written and Oral Communication	
Time-constrained Assessment	This technique covers all assessment that needs to be done within a centre-specified time constrained period on-site.	Reasoning	Summative
		Analysis	
		Critical thinking	
		Interpretation	
		Written Communication	
Top Ten	This technique asks students to create a 'top ten' list of key concepts presented in the assigned reading list.	Teamwork	Formative
		Creativity	
		Analysis	
		Collaboration	

Assessment Technique	Description	Transferable Skills Development	Formative or Summative
Written Task or Report	This technique asks students to complete an assignment in a structured written format, for example, a project plan, a report, marketing communication, set of instructions, giving information.	Reasoning	Summative
		Analysis	
		Written Communication	
		Critical Thinking	
		Interpretation	

October 2017

**For information about Edexcel, BTEC or LCCI qualifications visit
qualifications.pearson.com**

BTEC is a registered trademark of Pearson Education Limited

**Pearson Education Limited. Registered in England and Wales No. 872828
Registered Office: 80 Strand, London WC2R 0RL.
VAT Reg No GB 278 537121**